

OUTCOMES

PRE-INTERMEDIATE
WORKBOOK

CAROL NUTTALL
DAVID EVANS

CONTENTS

01	JOBS	P.4
02	SHOPS	P.10
03	GETTING THERE	P.16
04	EAT	P.22
05	RELAX	P.28
06	FAMILY AND FRIENDS	P.34
07	YOUR PLACE	P.40
08	EDUCATION	P.46
09	MIND AND BODY	P.52
10	PLACES TO STAY	P.58
11	SCIENCE AND NATURE	P.64
12	ON THE PHONE	P.70
13	CULTURE	P.76
14	STUFF	P.82
15	MONEY	P.88
16	EVENTS	P.94
	AUDIOSCRIPT	P.101
	ANSWER KEY	P.113

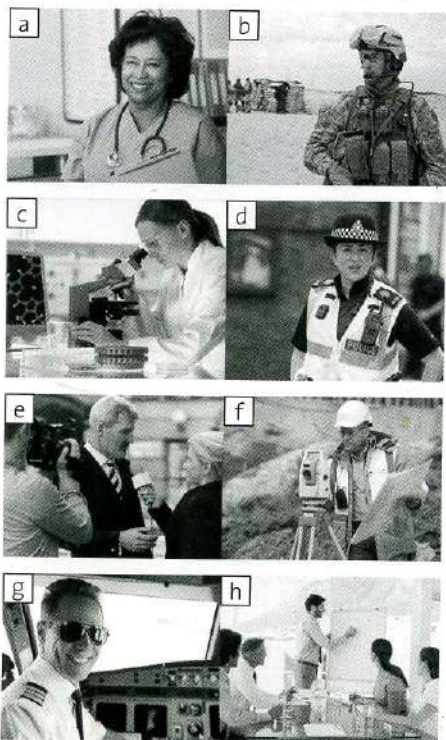
01

JOBS

VOCABULARY

Talking about jobs

1 Match the job with the photograph.



- 1 journalist
- 2 pilot
- 3 nurse
- 4 engineer
- 5 sales manager
- 6 soldier
- 7 scientist
- 8 police officer

2 Who does what? Complete the descriptions with a job from exercise 1.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Questions about jobs

3 Match the questions (1-6) with the answers (a-f).

- 1 How long have you worked there? a I'm a travel agent.
- 2 Where do you work? b Three years now.
- 3 So, do you get on with the people you work with? c At Four Points Travel, in Alsace Street.
- 4 What do you do? d During the week, we work nine till five thirty, but we always finish late on Fridays.
- 5 So, do you enjoy it? e Well, the manager can be a bit difficult, but the rest of the staff are fine.
- 6 What're the hours like? f Yes, I do. I like meeting people, and helping them make the right choice about where they want to go.

4 OUTCOMES



- 1 A works as part of a team and cares for people with health problems. They do a training course first and learn how to give medication to patients and help to make a patient comfortable in hospital. They often work very long hours, including working at night.
- 2 A works alone or in a team. They study very hard, do research and experiment both in a laboratory and outdoors in order to solve problems in different areas of biology, chemistry, physics or environmental sciences. They sometimes go to conferences to discuss new theories and ideas.
- 3 A investigates crime, and responds to emergencies. They may ask people questions, control traffic or crowds, and they help people who are lost or hurt. They work hard and sometimes work nights.
- 4 A usually does a training course to learn how to fly the airline's planes. Then, when they are ready, they start with short trips. More experienced ones work away from home for days at a time. They travel abroad, and sometimes do several flights in a day.
- 5 A does research and writes news stories. They go to different events, ask people questions, gather information, and may work for television, radio and newspaper companies. This is a very competitive career, and so they must use all social network sites to keep up-to-date with the latest news in a wide variety of areas.
- 6 A runs a sales team, so needs to get on with different personalities. They organise training courses, motivate the team to do well, and work with the marketing department and try to give customers what they want.
- 7 A does a tough training course, and must keep fit. They work for their country's army, and they learn a variety of skills. Their duties include rescue work in disasters such as tsunamis and earthquakes, and sometimes they fight in wars.
- 8 An does research, designs and develops new materials and products. They may organise and run projects, run their own company or work as part of a team. They work hard to find practical solutions to problems.

Language note

We use *they/their* when the sex of the person we are talking about is not important, or we don't wish to mention it.

4 Write the questions in the correct order.

- 1 do / what / do / you? ?
I'm a chemist. I work for a company that makes perfumes.
- 2 it / enjoy / you / do? ?
Yes, it can be fun. We try to create different aromas, and it's exciting when you find something new.
- 3 the / what / like / are / hours? ?
OK. I usually work from eight until four.
- 4 worked / long / you / have / there / how? ?
About six years now.
- 5 people / you / with / get on / do / the / work / you / with? ?
Generally, yes, but we do occasionally have disagreements.

LISTENING

5 You are going to listen to an interview with a firefighter. Before you listen, read these statements. Decide whether they are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 There are over 300 women firefighters in London.
- 2 Most of the work is about fighting fires.
- 3 Firefighters do a lot of first aid.
- 4 Firefighters need to be in good physical condition.
- 5 A small part of the job is about educating people.
- 6 Firefighters give a lot of talks.

6 1.1 Listen to the first part of the interview and check your answers.

7 1.1 Listen again and tick (✓) the activities that Megan mentions.

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| rescue people and animals | write reports on accidents |
| go to fires | deal with bombs |
| check equipment | make appointments |
| give first aid | make visits to schools |
| do fitness training | clean the fire station |

8 1.2 Listen to the second part of the interview and complete the sentences below.

- 1 Megan enjoys
- 2 She also likes giving
- 3 The most difficult part of the job is when
- 4 Megan really doesn't like

GRAMMAR

Present simple and present continuous

9 Choose the correct form of the verb in each sentence.

- A: So, Enrique, what ¹ do you do / are you doing?
E: I'm an architect.
- A: ² Do you work / Are you working alone, or with a team?
E: I ³ run / am running my own office with a partner.
- A: Oh, I see. And ⁴ do you work / are you working long hours?
E: Sometimes, yes. Right now, we're busy, so we ⁵ work / are working 10–12 hours a day. But it's not always like that.
- A: What ⁶ do you work / are you working on at the moment? Anything interesting?
E: Yes, we ⁷ design / are designing a sports and leisure centre, and it's very exciting.
- A: ⁸ Do you ever get / Are you ever getting stressed out?
E: Very rarely. I ⁹ don't work / am not working alone, so we ¹⁰ share / are sharing the worry!

10 Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

A DAY IN THE LIFE OF A

Wedding Co-ordinator

I work as a wedding co-ordinator. That means I ¹ (organise) wedding receptions. I have a great team who work together well, so we almost never ² (experience) problems. When a couple book, we ³ (have) several meetings to talk about anything special they would like to do. Today, for example, our couple is of mixed nationality. The bride is British Indian and the groom's Scottish. He wanted bagpipes; she wanted Indian food on the menu.

Nine o'clock

So, right now, I ⁴ (check) the final details with the head chef. He and his staff ⁵ (prepare) a wonderful menu. They're very busy, so I'm leaving them in peace.

Ten o'clock

The first problem of the day. Two members of the bar staff are ill and can't come in, so the bar manager ⁶ (look) for replacements.

Two o'clock

The reception room is almost ready, and looks fabulous. The waitresses ⁷ (place) the final flower decorations on the tables, and we're nearly ready! What can I say? This ⁸ (be) a typical day at work!

VOCABULARY Time management

1 Complete the conversation with the correct form of words from the box.

appointment	take a break	priority	delay
list	stay up late	arrange	rush

- Ms. S.: Right, Carl. What are we doing today?
 C.: Well, Ms. Schmidt, here's the ¹ of orders we need to send out. There are quite a lot, so Production's ² to get them ready.
 Ms. S.: Good. Tell them the Bancroft order's a ³, so they must finish that one first.
 C.: OK. Then, you've got an ⁴ with Mr. Jennings at 10am.
 Ms. S.: Mm. I'm too busy. Phone him and see if you can ⁵ it for this afternoon, please.
 C.: What about your meeting with the marketing department at 3 o'clock?
 Ms. S.: My presentation isn't ready yet, and I can't do it now. I'll need to ⁶ tonight and finish it, so let's ⁷ the meeting until tomorrow. Call them, will you? Now, I need to ⁸! Bring me some coffee, Carl, please.

GRAMMAR Present simple and present continuous for the future

2 Match the questions 1–6 with the answers a–f.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Are you coming to the cinema tonight? | a Of course. I've got some ideas I want to discuss with you. |
| 2 Is the meeting with the clients at 12? | b I've got a training course in Brussels. What about you? |
| 3 Are you busy tomorrow? | c My plane leaves at 4. |
| 4 What are you doing this weekend? | d It depends what time I finish work. |
| 5 There's a meeting about the new project at 11. Are you coming? | e Yes, I'm giving a presentation in the morning, and then I'm seeing some clients. |
| 6 When are you going to Zurich? | f No, they want to reschedule it for later this week. |

3 Make the following sentences negative.

- I've got an appointment with the sales manager this morning.
.....
- We're working on the new project this afternoon.
.....
- There's a meeting next Friday to discuss progress.
.....
- My contract ends in two months.
.....
- Jorge is attending a training course tomorrow.
.....
- I'm leaving work at the end of this month.
.....

4 Read this interview from a newspaper and complete the gaps with a suitable form of the verbs in brackets.

A number of students choose to take a gap year between leaving school and going to university. They usually travel, or gain some work experience during this time. Some go and do voluntary work. Alice Ter Haar, our reporter, interviewed one school leaver who is taking a gap year next year.



- Alice: So, Kami, what ¹ (you / do) in your gap year?
 Kami: Well, first of all, I ² (fly) to East Africa to do some voluntary work. A new welfare project ³ (start) on Monday. I ⁴ (work) there for about six months, and then I ⁵ (go) down to Antarctica.
 Alice: Why there?
 Kami: I ⁶ (have got) a place at Southampton University next year to study environmental science. My main interest is in climate change, and so I ⁷ (travel) to places where the climate's already been affected. I want to gain some experience of working in different climates.
 Alice: That sounds amazing! When are you leaving?
 Kami: My plane ⁸ (take off) at 7 this evening.

VOCABULARY Collocations

5 Circle the phrase which does not collocate with the word on the left.

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1 priority | make it a ~ / my main ~ / manage a ~ / agree on what the ~ is |
| 2 interview | have an ~ for a job / attend ~ training / a phone ~ / the ~ went badly |
| 3 contract | (not) be a ~ / have (got) a temporary ~ / sign the ~ / my ~ ends |
| 4 training | need more ~ / agree a new ~ / give ~ / get basic ~ |
| 5 job | apply for a ~ / need more ~ / lose my ~ / have a well-paid ~ |
| 6 project | work on a new ~ / a big ~ / launch a new ~ / go to a ~ |
| 7 staff | friendly and efficient ~ / employ new ~ / a positive ~ / train the ~ |
| 8 meeting | arrange a ~ / a part-time ~ / have a staff ~ / go to a ~ |

6 Complete the phrases you circled with the correct word from the list above.

7 Complete the sentences with a suitable word from exercise 5.

- 1 Business is really good and we're expanding, so we need to employ new
- 2 Jenny's working on a new at the moment. She's designing an advert for a software company.
- 3 Can you arrange a with the clients this week to discuss the plans?
- 4 Paola's got a temporary with a major bank, in tech support.
- 5 This company makes it a to offer staff regular training courses.
- 6 Lans has a well-paid with a law firm in the city.
- 7 Henri thinks his phone for the job of project manager went well.
- 8 If the company accepts you, you get basic before they send you out in the field.

Language note *job* versus *work*

Use *job* (countable noun) to talk specifically about what a person does. *I have a new job as an accountant.*
Use *work* (uncountable noun) to talk in general about something you are doing. *I'm doing some work at the moment, so we'll talk later.*

READING

8 Read the job advertisements below. Match the items in the pictures with one of the jobs.



1 2 3 4

9 Which job(s) require(s) someone who:

- 1 speaks a foreign language?
- 2 has previous work experience? and
- 3 will work for no money?
- 4 does not want to work full-time?
- 5 likes working with dogs? and
- 6 wants to choose when they work?
- 7 is happy to work six days a week?
- 8 is happy working with the public?

A

Volunteer Hosts

Are you a science student, or someone who cares about the oceans? Perhaps you want to become a marine biologist. If so, would you like to get some useful work experience?

The National Marine Aquarium is looking for volunteer hosts to give educational talks and answer visitors' questions. Working days and hours can be arranged to suit you.

For further information, email Sally Dunn at sdunn@national-aquarium.com

B

Groomer required - West London

A smart pet boutique and salon based in West London is looking for an experienced dog groomer. Duties include bathing and drying dogs, as well as grooming their coats.

If you are interested, please contact Julian on 07780 624 356 to arrange an interview.

C

Part-time housekeeper required for country house - Oxfordshire

Do you enjoy country life? Have you got high standards of cleaning and ironing? A lively family is looking for a friendly, experienced person to work from 8am-1pm, Monday to Friday. Responsibilities include cleaning antique furniture and looking after two dogs three nights a week, and occasionally when the family goes away.

Please contact Mr. Verne on 02384 569 321 for further information.

D

NANNY NEEDED - GENEVA, SWITZERLAND

A British family living in Geneva is looking for an experienced nanny to help look after two children aged eight and five years old. The mother is a restaurant owner and the father is the head chef. The family lives close to the city centre. They would like the nanny to work mainly in the evenings, with Mondays completely free. This position is suitable for anyone who speaks very good English and French, and loves children.

10 Complete the sentences with one of the phrases from the box.

work experience	training session
job advertisement	temporary contract
long hours	marketing department

- 1 I work very in a busy department store.
- 2 I'm training to be a computer technician, and I'm getting some in a large company.
- 3 I'm on a at the moment, but I'm hoping to get a permanent position soon.
- 4 I saw your in the local paper, and I'd like to apply for the position.
- 5 Tomorrow's is on time management. I really need this!
- 6 I work in the, and we develop ways to advertise the company's new products.

VOCABULARY Activities at work

- 1 Complete the dialogues below with the present continuous form of the verbs in the box.

do	attend	study	install
advertise	gain	cause	

- 1 A: So, Meena, how's work?
M: Oh, don't ask! We some new software in the office at the moment, and it all sorts of problems. So my boss is not a happy man!
- 2 B: So, are you doing anything interesting at the moment, Pavlo?
P: Yes, I am, actually! As part of my nurse's training, I some voluntary work in an old people's home. I've met some wonderful people, and I some valuable work experience! I've discovered I really enjoy working with the elderly!
- 3 C: Fiona, how are you getting on with your research?
F: Fine. I ways to deal with stress in the office, and it's very interesting.
- 4 E: So, how are things at work, Malik?
M: OK. I an exhibition this week. We our new photocopying equipment.
- 2 Choose the correct verb to complete the following conversation with a sales manager from a large company.
- A: So, Rashid, what are you ¹ *working on* / *organising* at the moment?
R: Well, a lot's happening at work at the moment, actually! I'm ² *teaching* / *learning* the sales team all about the company's new product.
- A: Oh! Is that on the market already?
R: No, the company's going to launch it next month, but we want to be ready to sell it. I'm ³ *negotiating* / *advising* them on how to approach their clients. Fortunately, they're a good group, and are ⁴ *learning* / *teaching* fast.
- A: Right! So, why are you so excited about it, then?
R: I've just made contact with a really big company, and am trying to ⁵ *organise* / *advise* a meeting with them. They're interested in the new product, and I'm hoping to ⁶ *work on* / *negotiate* a deal.

LISTENING

- 3 1.3 Listen to an interview with two teleworkers. Then, write down:
- 1 why they work from home.
Viktor:
Yoko:
- 2 what they think are the advantages of working from home:
Viktor:
Yoko:

PRONUNCIATION

Stress in verb collocations

- 4 1.4 Listen to the following phrases and underline the stressed syllable. The first one is done for you.
- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| go to a <u>meeting</u> | work from home |
| negotiate a deal | do research |
| make a proposal | make someone an offer |
| sign the contract | employ new staff |

- 5 1.4 Listen again and repeat the phrases.

DEVELOPING WRITING

A formal email – asking for information

- 6 Read the advert. Does the job interest you?

Are you a science student, or someone who cares about the oceans? Perhaps you are planning to become a marine biologist. If so, would you like to get some useful work experience? The National Marine Aquarium is looking for volunteer hosts to give educational talks and answer visitors' questions. Working days and hours can be arranged to suit you. sdunn@national-aquarium.com

- 7 Read Chad's email. What does he ask for?

From: Chad Duffy [cduffy@tiscali.com]
To: sdunn@national-aquarium.com
Subject: volunteer host vacancy

Dear Ms Dunn,

A) I saw your advertisement for volunteer hosts on the National Marine Aquarium's website, and I am writing to ask for further information about the position.

B) At present, I am studying Marine Biology at Southampton University, and am in my third year. I visited the Aquarium last month and saw your amazing shark population. I am planning to specialise in the study of sharks in my future career, and am hoping to gain work experience in this area.

C) I am very interested in the post. Could you send me more information about the job and an application form, please?

D) I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,
Chad Duffy

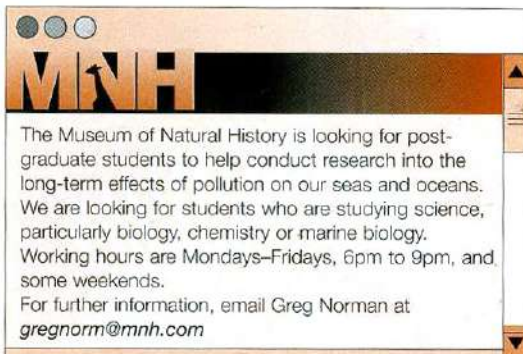
8 Match the paragraphs (A–D) in the email to the descriptions (1–4) below.

- 1 give information about yourself
- 2 ask for information
- 3 say politely that you expect a reply
- 4 explain why you are writing

9 A formal email is organised like an informal email but the language is different. Write the formal language from Chad's email next to the informal language in Charlie's email.

informal email	formal email
Hi Gill	
I'm working in a pub at the moment.	
Can you send me the photos from your party?	
Thanks a lot.	
Can't wait to hear from you!	
Lots of love	
Charlie	

10 Write a formal email applying for this job. Use the advert and the notes below. Write about 120 words.



MNH

The Museum of Natural History is looking for post-graduate students to help conduct research into the long-term effects of pollution on our seas and oceans. We are looking for students who are studying science, particularly biology, chemistry or marine biology. Working hours are Mondays–Fridays, 6pm to 9pm, and some weekends. For further information, email Greg Norman at gregnorm@mnh.com

introduce myself

- * 2nd year post-graduate - PhD in Marine Biology
- * special interest in endangered sea plants

questions to ask

- * which seas/oceans are they studying?
- * will we go on study trips?
- * ask for application form

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 1

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 1 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

management	break	launching	giving
arrange	staff	interview	temporary

- 1 I'd like to an appointment to see Mrs. Clarke, please.
- 2 Paul has a job tomorrow with that new company, so I hope he gets it.
- 3 I've got a contract with a law firm, but I'm hoping they'll offer me a permanent position soon.
- 4 Our construction company is a new project next month. We're going to build a cinema complex outside the town.
- 5 Gina has decided to take a from her studies and travel abroad for a year.
- 6 We need to employ some part-time to cover the lunch hours.
- 7 Alan's a presentation on staff training this afternoon.
- 8 We run regular courses in time at the college.

2 Complete the sentences with the noun form of the verb in brackets.

- 1 Jackie's (present) to the marketing department was really interesting.
- 2 Sukhi has a very busy lifestyle, and has little time for (relax).
- 3 The company has been sold and is under new (manage).
- 4 Amazon has a large (distribute) centre in Milton Keynes.
- 5 Have you seen their new (advertise)? It's great!

3 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 When the company you work for pays you an amount of money that does not change, you are on a *fixed salary*.
- 2 A *product* is a piece of work that you do over a long period of time.
- 3 *Voluntary work* is a job that you get paid for.
- 4 When you *negotiate* a deal you discuss something with a customer to try and reach an agreement.
- 5 If something you order is late in arriving, you may ask the company why there is a *delay*.
- 6 If a piece of work is a *priority*, it is not very important or urgent.

4 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 The *research* / *marketing* department is trying to develop a new cleaning product.
- 2 The company is *advising* / *exploiting* its part-time staff by not paying them for any extra hours they work.
- 3 I can't come to the meeting tomorrow as I'm *installing* / *attending* a conference in Paris this week.
- 4 The company has an excellent after-sales service which offers *staff* / *customers* support in using their products.
- 5 In some countries, women are still fighting for their *rights* / *priorities* to things such as equal pay.
- 6 The workers agreed to go on *pension* / *strike* after the company cut their wages by 10%.

Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again. Compare your scores.

02

SHOPS

VOCABULARY

Describing things you bought

1 Put the things into the correct box.

coat	sofa	hat	jewellery	bike
shoes	mobile phone	suit	trousers	T-shirt
laptop	leather	jeans	shirt	gold
skirt	dress	silver	top	camera
trainers	wool			

Things we wear

Materials

Things we use

2 Match the descriptions below with things from exercise 1. Some may describe more than one thing.

- They're really smart, so I can wear them to work.
.....
- They don't fit and are uncomfortable to walk in.
.....
- It's light and easy to carry.....
- It's pure wool and quite thick, so it keeps me warm in the winter.....
- It's light and cool. I bought it to wear on holiday in Mallorca.....
- It's nice and big, and comfortable to lie on.....
- He designs each piece differently, so it's unique. This is gold, but he makes silver ones too.....
- It's easy to use and has quite a few different functions.
.....

Learner tip

Record vocabulary connected with a topic together on the same page in your vocabulary notebook. For example, make a list of the words connected with shopping that you already know and add the new words from the unit as you learn them. This will help you remember them.

3 Complete the text with a suitable word or phrase.

complicated	cool	easy	last
to follow	looked better	functions	quality

Well, after negotiating this great deal with a new client I was feeling pretty pleased with myself, so I thought I'd buy myself something to celebrate. I had a look in the Mobile Shop, to see what offers there were on smartphones. My old one was really good ¹ and could ² for another few years, but I wanted a newer model. The one I fancied came in lots of different colours. The guy in the shop told me that green was a popular one, but I thought it ³ in white. It had quite a few different ⁴ and looked ⁵, but he said it was really ⁶ to use. It looked really ⁷ so I bought it. However, the instructions were difficult ⁸ and I couldn't understand them, so I ended up taking it back to the shop the next day.

LISTENING



4 2.1 You are going to hear a radio programme in which three people talk about the problem of compulsive shopping. Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 20% of British people are compulsive shoppers.
- Maria's husband was worried that she was spending too much money.
- Maria says she has got 135 bags in her wardrobe.
- Compulsive shopping disorder only affects women.
- Keith's wife left him.
- Keith says that men don't usually buy the same things as women.

5 2.1 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 What did Maria's husband tell her to do about her problem?
.....
- 2 How has the problem affected Keith's relationship with his wife?
.....

Learner tip

When you do a listening task, try to gain a general understanding, or the 'gist' of what you listen to the first time you hear it. Don't worry about answering all the questions. The second time you listen, you can complete the exercise.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Complimenting

6 Use the words and phrases from the box to complete the dialogue below.

long have you had it	comfortable	great
love	did you get it	design
suits you	like	

- 1 S: Jane! I ¹ that dress! It really ²
J: Oh! Hi, Sally! Thanks.
S: It's a really nice ³ Where ⁴?
J: I got it in Top Shop, actually. And that's a ⁵ phone. Is it new?
S: Oh yeah! Dave gave it to me.
J: How ⁶?
3 S: He gave it to me for my birthday, about a month ago.
4 J: I ⁷ your boots, too. They look really ⁸
S: They are. I got them in the sale at Johnson's last week for £80.
5 J: Really? Did they have any more?
S: I'm not sure. Why don't you go and see? I'll go with you, if you like.

GRAMMAR Past simple

7 Match the questions (1–5) with the answers (a–e) to complete the dialogue.

- 1 Did you do anything interesting this morning?
 - 2 Really? Was it any good?
 - 3 Oh. Did you buy anything nice?
 - 4 Oh, right. Are they the ones you're wearing? They're lovely!
 - 5 You're joking! They look really good quality. Did they have any other colours?
- a I think I saw some in blue and brown. Why don't you go and have a look?
 - b Well, I wanted to get a dress to wear to my cousin's wedding, but I didn't find anything I liked. I bought some nice shoes, though.
 - c Yeah. I went to that new shopping centre in Bracknell.
 - d Nice, aren't they? They were reasonable, too. I only paid €15 for them.
 - e It was OK. There were some nice clothes shops, but there wasn't much else.

8 Choose the correct words in *italics* to complete the sentences.

- 1 I *buy* / *bought* a new watch in town yesterday.
- 2 We *selled* / *sold* our old car last month.
- 3 I *went* / *go* to the market this morning and *find* / *found* all sorts of bargains! Leather bags for £15!
- 4 Mum and Dad *are giving* / *gave* me a new mobile for my birthday last week, so do you want my old one?
- 5 There's a nice laptop in that shop. It only *cost* / *costs* £99.
- 6 I'm fed up! I *was spending* / *spent* £80 on this dress and then ten minutes later I *see* / *saw* the same one for just £40 in another shop!

9 Complete the conversation. Use the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- Dave: Oh, you're back, darling! ¹ (you go) to IKEA?
Sally: Yeah, it ² (be) great! It was packed, though. There are always too many people there.
D: ³ (find) what you wanted?
S: Well, they ⁴ (not have) the table, but I ⁵ (get) these really nice cups. Do you like them?
D: Yes, they're really nice! And ⁶ (you get) that lovely lamp there, too?
S: Oh no! I ⁷ (buy) that from Heavenly Homes.
D: I love it! ⁸ (do) they have any others like it?
S: Well, not exactly the same, but there was one that was similar. I ⁹ (find) it hard to choose between them.
D: Why ¹⁰ (you not buy) both of them? We really need two.
S: Well, they were too expensive, to be honest.

VOCABULARY Shopping online

1 Choose the correct word in *italics* to complete the sentence.

- I bought these jeans. They were only £15, *reduced* / *returned* from 40.
- I like ordering things from the shop's website, as they've got a really reliable delivery *fee* / *service*.
- The smartphone I wanted was very popular, and when I finally got to the shop it was out of *stock* / *sale*.
- When they *took* / *delivered* my order, the jacket was the wrong size. It was too small.
- I bought it on eBay. I *won* / *bid* £35 for it, and the guy let me have it.
- You look great! That dress really *fits* / *suits* you!

2 Complete the blog with the words and phrases in the box.

bargain reliable dropped wide selection
out of the box my money back damaged fault
second-hand

Shopping Therapy blogspot

By Susie G

posted Wednesday, 20th Jan.

Good shopping experience

I'm a real fan of eBay, and often buy things there. You can find a ¹ of things on the site, from electrical goods and furniture to bikes and toys. They're usually good quality too, because users comment on things they've bought from other people, so everyone's careful about what they sell. I bought this ² dishwasher last month, as a new one was too expensive. It was a real ³, as it was only six months old and the guy wanted £80 for it. I was delighted with it, and still am!

posted Friday, 15th March

Bad shopping day!

OK, we all make mistakes, but this one was pretty stupid. A week ago, I ⁴ my TV on the floor, and so needed a new one. A friend recommended a new website to me called Ubuy. He said it was really ⁵, so I decided to have a look at it. Well, I found a TV I liked, made a bid for it and won. The guy brought it yesterday, I paid him and he left. However, when I took it ⁶, it was ⁷ Of course the guy didn't answer his mobile phone, and so I couldn't get ⁸ It was my own ⁹ A hard lesson learned!



3 Read the quiz about shopping and answer the questions.

ARE YOU A SAVVY SHOPPER? TAKE OUR ONLINE QUIZ AND FIND OUT!

A Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- Women spend 20-30% more money than men online.
- Today, people buy 22% of everything they need online.
- 55% of what we spend online goes on books, music and software.
- Women return 10% of the clothes they buy online, men return more than 20%.
- We do most of our online shopping between 8 and 9 in the evening.
- 29% of us use a smartphone to do our online shopping.

B Choose the most suitable word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- If something is really good quality ...
A it is out of stock. B it is uncomfortable to wear.
C it lasts for years.
- If instructions are complicated they are ...
A easy to use. B light to carry around.
C difficult to follow.
- If something you bought is damaged you can ...
A get your money back. B check the delivery fee.
C recommend a new one.
- Something is a bargain when ...
A it's got a good design. B it isn't expensive.
C you buy it online.
- If someone recommends a website they ...
A don't use it. B think it's reliable.
C tell you not to use it.
- A thick coat ...
A keeps you warm. B looks really nice.
C is very smart.
- Two kinds of material are ...
A leather and wool. B earrings and rings.
C boots and shoes.
- Something suits you when it ...
A is good quality. B is the right size.
C looks really nice.
- Second-hand things are ...
A clothes. B bargains.
C not new.
- If something is unique ...
A there is a wide selection.
B it is the only one.
C it is complicated.

See page 135 for a Fact File on shopping.

READING

- 4 Place the following items in the correct group in the table.

shirt	hairdryer	toothbrush
face cream	wine	trousers
cheese	lipstick	vacuum cleaner
chicken	skirt	dishwasher

food and drink	clothing
toiletries and cosmetics	electrical goods

- 5 Read the newspaper article and choose the most suitable headline.

- 1 **The changing face of men's shopping**
- 2 **Men buy face cream and women buy drills!?**
- 3 **Women still best shoppers**

- 6 Choose the best ending to each of the statements.

- 1 The report says that:
 - a 70% of women in the UK shop in supermarkets
 - b women do most of the food shopping in the UK.
- 2 Cheap fashion imports from China and the rest of the Far East mean:
 - a women buy more clothes
 - b an increase in prices.
- 3 The report says that:
 - a more men are buying toiletries
 - b men are interested in their appearance.
- 4 Supermarkets now sell electrical goods to:
 - a get men to shop there
 - b get women to buy them.

- 7 Underline eight comparative words and phrases in the text.

A recent report on the differences between men and women's shopping habits found changes in the balance of buying activity between the sexes. The report, published last month by the market research company, Street Trends, focused on the areas of food and drink, toiletries and cosmetics, clothing and electrical goods.

Little change was found in food and drink shopping habits. Over 70% of supermarket shopping in the UK is done by the women of the household, and they generally control how much is spent on food. The report suggests that women show a greater ability to find special offers, and are more interested than men in getting good value when they shop. Similarly, in the area of clothing, women are still greater consumers than men. There has been a general increase in the purchase of clothes over the last few years, due to the introduction to the UK of cheap fashion from China and the

rest of the Far East. Discount clothing has become more popular, as retailers have become skilled in reproducing fashion designs at lower costs. This is most noticeable in women's fashion, where purchases have increased significantly in the last year.

Interesting changes were seen, however, in the purchase of toiletries and electrical goods. Approximately 80% of British women do most of the shopping for cosmetics and toiletries, but the men's toiletry market is growing, as younger men are more interested in their physical appearance than they were five years ago. Well-known cosmetics companies are now targeting men with new skincare products. In the

case of electrical goods, men have traditionally been regarded as the main buyers in the household. However, women are now taking a more active role in the purchase of these items.

Several major supermarkets are expanding into this area and targeting female customers, so further changes are expected in these areas in the future.



PRONUNCIATION Stress in collocations

- 8 Look at the following phrases from the reading text. Practise saying them. Stress the underlined syllable in each phrase.

food and drink toiletries and cosmetics
electrical goods market research
 special offer good value Far East

- 9 2.2 Listen and repeat the phrases.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Offering to help

1 Match the phrases in the box to their function.

Not at all	Would you like a
Thanks a lot	Are you sure
Thanks!	Of course
You don't mind	Do you want to
Do you want me to	

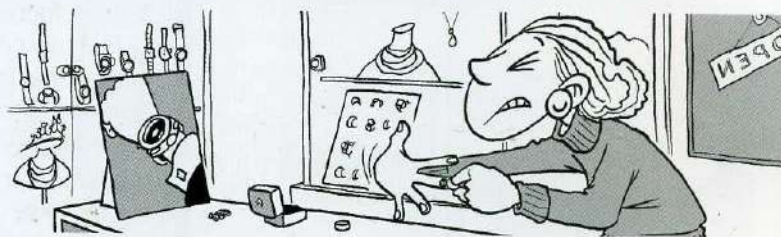
- Making offers:
- Checking:
- Reassuring:
- Accepting the offer:

2 Fill the gaps with a suitable phrase from the box in exercise 1.

- A: I'd like this please.
 B: Have you tried it out?
 A: Yes. It works fine. Could you pack it for me? It's going to travel on a plane.
 B: ¹ bag?
 A: Hmm, have you got anything stronger? I don't want it to break.
 B: Well, we may have a box in the store room.
² have a look?
 A: ³ ?
 B: Yes, ⁴ I'll just be a minute.
 A: Great. ⁵
 C: Oh, no! Only one changing room!
 D: Is that all you want to try on?
 C: Yeah, it is.
 D: ⁶ go first, then? I'll wait.
 C: Really? ⁷ ?
 D: ⁸ I'm trying on all these. Go on.
 C: ⁹

- I'm afraid we don't have that style any more, madam. Would you like to try ?
 a something a little more modern
 b a modern one c less modern one
- This MP3 player doesn't work very well. Can I have, please?
 a worse than this b one better c a better one
- You'll break a leg wearing roller skates, Tim! Why don't you try an activity that is ?
 a more safe b less dangerous c more comfortable

4 Write questions using the words in brackets.



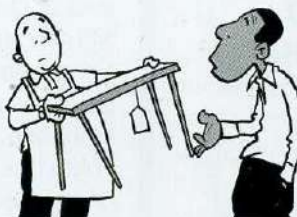
- I'm afraid it's too small! (large)?



- I'm afraid it's too expensive. (cheap)?



- It looks rather old-fashioned! (modern)?



- It doesn't look very strong. (good quality)?



- It's too hard. (comfortable)?

GRAMMAR Comparatives

3 Choose the most suitable phrase to complete the sentences.

- They're a bit tight. Have you size?
 a got them in a more bigger
 b any in a smaller
 c got some in a bigger
- This chair's very hard. Do you ?
 a got anything less
 b have anything more comfortable
 c have a more soft one

DEVELOPING WRITING

An email – informal writing

5 Read the email and answer the questions.

- Are Elena and Enrique:
 a colleagues?
 b uncle and niece?
 c friends?
- Why is Elena writing to Enrique?

- What did Elena do this morning?

- What are Elena and Enrique's plans for next month?

To: Enrique
Subject: birthday and news

Hi Enrique

How are you? Thanks for your card and present. I'm wearing the top, and the card is standing on my desk as I write.

On my birthday, some friends and I ¹ (go) out dancing, and the DJ at the club ² (play) a lot of Latin music. I ³ (think) of you in Argentina, and ⁴ (wish) you were here! In Italy, we don't dance in cafeterias like you do over there, but we have some great night clubs. You'll see when you come next month.

My uncle ⁵ (give) me some money for my birthday, so I ⁶ (decide) to go shopping this morning. There's a new shop in the centre that sells discount clothes and equipment for outdoor sports. It's a lot cheaper than other sports shops in Milan. I ⁷ (buy) a new sleeping bag for our camping trip, some shorts, a T-shirt and some climbing gloves and only ⁸ (pay) 60 euros! Have you got everything ready for our trip? Remember to bring your climbing shoes!

See you very soon now!

Take care,

Elena

6 Write the past simple of the verbs in brackets to complete the email above.

7 Underline the eight phrases that we can use when we write to a friend.

Hi, James!
Thank you very much for your letter, dated 15th March.
Dear Julie
How are you?
Dear Mr Hanson
I'm writing to ask for some information about St Petersburg.
It was great to hear from you again.
I wanted to ask you something.
I look forward to hearing from you.
Write soon
Take care
Best wishes
Yours sincerely

8 Imagine you are Enrique. Write a reply to Elena. Use the plan below to help you.

Paragraph 1: Thank her for her email, and say something about her birthday.

Paragraph 2: Comment on her shopping news, and say something about things you have bought for the camping trip.

Paragraph 3: Ask her some questions about your plans for the trip.

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 2

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 2 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Match the opposites.

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1 loose | a second-hand |
| 2 expensive | b tight |
| 3 globally | c cool |
| 4 warm | d bright |
| 5 plain | e locally |
| 6 new | f bargain |

2 Complete the sentences with the correct nouns.

designs	receipt	quality	instructions
material	delivery	present	

- It says 'read the carefully before using the hairdryer', but they're in Japanese!
- I order clothes from that site because they offer free to anywhere in the UK.
- I really like some of Zara's fashion this year.
- When I paid for my new phone, I didn't get a
- I'm looking for a for my mother's birthday.
- That coat is made from a special that is suitable for very cold weather.
- I want some of your best meat, please.

3 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 We waited in a | a selection of children's shoes. |
| 2 This latest model is top | b service to its customers. |
| 3 That shop offers very | c it back and changed it. |
| reliable | d queue for two hours to buy |
| 4 They've got a wide | tickets. |
| 5 It was damaged, so I took | e of stock. |
| 6 I asked for a medium size | f of the range, with even more |
| but they were out | apps. |

4 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- If a dress *suits* you, it's the right size for your body.
- A *fee* is money you pay for a service.
- You *damage* things, but *injure* a person.
- Something is *unique* when there are many others like it.
- We say a car *lasts* when it's not very fast.
- You *wrap* up a present when you cover it in colourful paper.

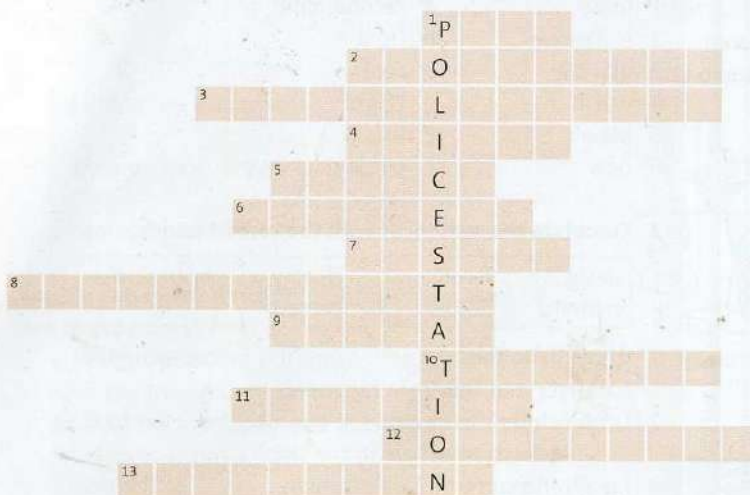
* Score ___/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again. Compare your scores.

03

GETTING THERE

1 Read the clues (1–13) and write the words in the spaces on the grid.



- 1 a place with trees where you can go for a walk, and have a picnic
- 2 a place where two roads meet
- 3 a place where you go to play football
- 4 a way to cross a river on foot or by car
- 5 a building where people go to pray
- 6 a famous building or statue
- 7 a building where you can see interesting historical or scientific objects
- 8 cars stop at these lights
- 9 an underground train system in American English
- 10 a building where the local council works and runs the town
- 11 a place on the street where people on foot can cross the road
- 12 cars drive round this
- 13 a place where you find swings and slides for children

2 Underline the word which does not make a compound word with the key word.

1 sports	ground	TV	programme
2 police	station	woman	day
3 town	hall	centre	shop
4 cross	roads	shirt	word
5 traffic	lights	warden	car
6 play	ground	room	person
7 bus	drink	station	stop
8 church	hall	person	meeting

Language note

Compound nouns are made up of two words. Sometimes the words form a single word, e.g. a *roundabout*, a *crossroads*. Sometimes they are two words, e.g. *traffic lights*, a *sports ground*.

PRONUNCIATION

Stress on compound nouns

Learner tip

In compound nouns the main stress is usually on the first word.

'traffic lights

When you don't know, check in a good learner's dictionary. They have marks to show where the main stress is. Remember to mark the stress on new words in your vocabulary book.

3 Mark the stress on the following compound nouns.

- 1 crossroads
- 2 roundabout
- 3 underground
- 4 playground
- 5 traffic lights
- 6 sports ground
- 7 town hall
- 8 police station
- 9 traffic warden
- 10 sports programme
- 11 town centre
- 12 police woman

4 3.1 Listen and check your answers.



DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Giving directions

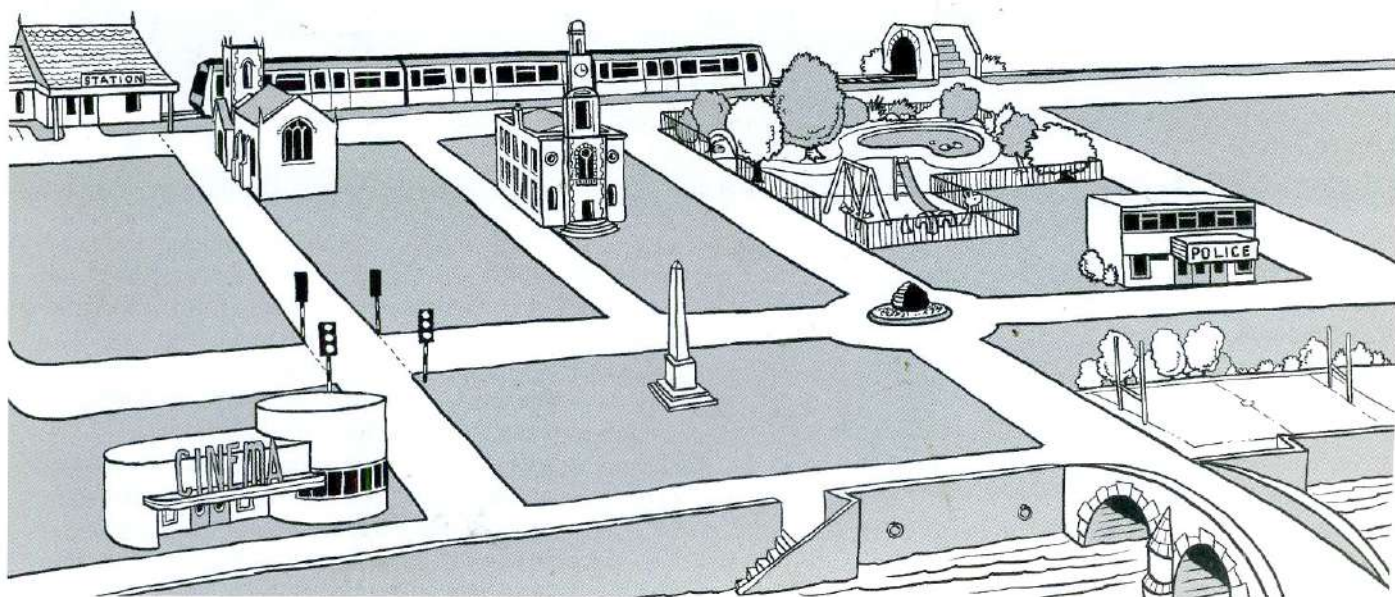
5 Complete the sentences with one of the phrases in the box.

near here	I get to	you tell me
the way to	know where	the nearest

- 1 Excuse me. How do the sports ground?
- 2 Excuse me. Is there a tube station , please?
- 3 Excuse me. Do you the police station is?
- 4 Excuse me. Do you know the town hall, please?
- 5 Excuse me. Can how to get to the museum, please?
- 6 Excuse me. Where's bank?

6 Look at this map and give directions from the railway station to the police station by numbering these sentences in the right order.

- a At the roundabout, go straight on.
- b Go down the road past the town hall.
- c Come out of the railway station and turn left.
- d Go past the church.
- e You'll find the police station on the next corner on the left.
- f Turn left.
- g Take the first turning on the right.
- h At the end of the road you'll see a monument.



LISTENING

7 3.2 Listen to the directions and follow the route on the map starting at the railway station. Where does the route finish?

8 3.2 Which of these things were mentioned in the directions? Tick (✓) the ones you hear. Then listen again to check.

- 1 crossroads
- 2 playground
- 3 sports ground
- 4 corner
- 5 traffic lights
- 6 bridge
- 7 church
- 8 railway station
- 9 monument
- 10 roundabout
- 11 river
- 12 police station

9 3.3 Listen to a man giving a woman directions. They are in the park. Follow the route on the map and answer these questions.

- 1 Where does the woman want to go?
- 2 What mistake does the man make?
- 3 Where do the man's directions take the woman?

READING

1 Read this magazine article quickly and choose the best description.

- a A description of a journey that the writer has made
- b Advice for people who are planning a holiday
- c An advertisement for a holiday in the USA
- d Advice for business travellers

2 Read the article again. What are the writer's opinions? Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 It's very difficult to make the trip across the USA.
- 2 It's a good idea to drive.
- 3 It's a good idea to buy a car.
- 4 It's a long way between cities.
- 5 You should spend a lot of time in New York and Los Angeles.
- 6 The north east is the most interesting area.
- 7 American hotels cost a lot of money.
- 8 It's a good idea to book hotels in advance.

Many people dream of travelling across the USA. It's one of the world's great journeys and it's surprisingly easy to make that dream come true, as our travel expert explains.

You can travel across the USA by bus, train or plane, but for the real experience, you have to drive. There's no need to buy a car, because renting a car is easy. There are car hire offices at all major airports and most companies will offer one-way rental, which means that you don't have to return the car to the same office.

When you're driving, remember that the distances between cities can be very long, so choose a comfortable car with air conditioning and make sure you take lots of your favourite music with you.

You'll probably start your journey in New York on the east coast or in Los Angeles on the west coast. They are both fascinating cities but don't spend too long there – get out on the road! That's where you'll experience the real USA.

Most people agree that the south west of the USA is the most interesting part of the country. That's where you'll find the mountains of Utah and the deserts of Arizona with world-famous sights such as the Grand Canyon and Monument Valley.

As for accommodation, there are lots of motels everywhere and you don't normally need to book in advance, so you don't have to plan your journey in too much detail. You'll also find plenty of diners serving good American food like hamburgers, hot dogs and pizza. But be careful! Americans are big eaters, so you can expect to return home a few kilos heavier than you arrived!

Glossary

- air conditioning:** a system that controls the temperature inside a car
- fascinating:** very interesting
- motels:** hotels for drivers
- diners:** cheap restaurants

ROAD TRIP USA

VOCABULARY Travelling by plane

3 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 I was able to check in
 - 2 It was only when I joined the queue
 - 3 We got to the airport in plenty of time but it took ages
 - 4 The trains weren't running, so I called
 - 5 The plane was rather late
 - 6 When I checked the departures
 - 7 We got stuck in heavy traffic on
 - 8 I quickly ran to the boarding
- a taking off, but still managed to land on time.
 - b the way to the airport and missed the flight.
 - c board, it said 'delayed' next to my flight.
 - d gate, and was the last person to board the plane.
 - e online, so I had more time to spend in the duty free.
 - f a taxi to take me to the airport.
 - g to board that I realised I was at the wrong gate!
 - h to go through security, and we nearly missed our flight.

GRAMMAR Past simple and past continuous

4 Complete the sentences with the correct past form of the verb in brackets.

- When I arrived in the Departure hall, a huge queue of people(wait) to check in.
- I heard the last call for my flight as I (go) through security.
- I was buying some duty free when someone (steal) my camera.
- We (sit) in the plane when the flight attendant (tell) us the plane couldn't take off for another hour.
- We (travel) to Hong Kong and we (have to) change flights in Zurich.
- The plane (take off) when suddenly one of the engines (go) dead.

5 Circle the correct form of the verbs in *italics*.

- While I *travelled* / *was travelling* to Sydney I *lost* / *was losing* all my luggage in Bangkok.
- The train *wasn't running* / *didn't run*, so I *was taking* / *took* a bus to the airport.
- I *dropped* / *was dropping* my passport while I *was running* / *ran* towards the boarding gate.
- I *was talking* / *talked* on the phone when I *was hearing* / *heard* someone call my name.
- I *knocked* / *was knocking* over a woman's coffee as I *left* / *was leaving* the cafeteria.

6 Complete the story with the correct past simple or past continuous form of the verb in brackets.



I was really excited about my holiday in Hawaii. So, I ¹ (go) shopping and ² (buy) some new clothes. When the day ³ (come) to leave, it ⁴ (rain), so I ⁵ (call) a taxi to take me to the airport. I ⁶ (ask) the driver to stop at a chemist's so that I could buy some tablets for my allergy. As I ⁷ (get) out of the taxi, a bus ⁸ (go) past and splashed water all over me! So, when I ⁹ (arrive) at the airport, I quickly went to the bathroom to change my clothes. After that, it ¹⁰ (take) ages to go through check-in. Then, as I ¹¹ (go) through security, they ¹² (stop) me to search my hand luggage. By this time it ¹³ (get) late, and so I had to run to the boarding gate. I ¹⁴ (get) there as they ¹⁵ (close) the gate! Fortunately, the woman from the airline let me onto the flight.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Apologising for being late

7 Complete the dialogues with the phrases in the box.

don't worry at least missed got stuck in
haven't been here was chatting to

- A: Sorry I'm late. I my neighbour and completely forgot the time.
B: Oh well. Never mind. you're here now.
- A: Sorry I'm late. I heavy traffic.
B: What was the problem?
- A: Sorry I'm late. I the bus.
B: It's OK. I long.

LISTENING

8 3.4 Listen to the first part of a conversation between Greg and his friend Anna about Greg's road trip on Route 66. Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- Greg had a:
a great time b terrible time.
- Route 66 is:
a 4,248 miles long b 2,448 miles long.
- Each day, Greg travelled:
a 116 miles b 150 miles.
- Route 66 is:
a a normal road b a modern six-lane motorway.

9 Match these words in the box to the photos. There are two words for each photo.

valley Cadillac arch
river monument National Park



10 3.5 Listen to the second part of the conversation. Number the photos 1-3 in the order you hear them.

VOCABULARY Transport

1 Complete the conversations with the words in the boxes.

motorway	service station	huge load	train
coach	truck	passengers	long line of cars

- A: A ¹ carrying a ² crashed at junction 12, and was blocking two lanes. So we were stuck on the ³ for ages. You should have seen the ⁴ stretching for miles in front of us. The ⁵ driver decided to stop in this ⁶ to give all the ⁷ a break. So, don't expect me any time soon.
 B: You see! I told you to take the ⁸!

ride	test	motorbike	licence
------	------	-----------	---------

- S: Jim! I've got my ¹! The ² was easy!
 J: Congratulations, Sally! When are you taking me for a ³, then?
 S: Ah, you'll have to wait a while, as I crashed my ⁴ on the way home from the test centre.

tip	travel card	underground	taxi	lines	charge
-----	-------------	-------------	------	-------	--------

- D: Shall we take a ¹?
 G: No way! They ² a fortune to take you a couple of miles, and then they expect a ³ The ⁴ is much cheaper. We can get a one-day ⁵ that lets you go on all the ⁶ in the city centre.
 D: But we won't see much that way.

van	bikes	drive	on strike	cycle lanes
rail service	park	cancelled	hire a vehicle	

- K: The ¹ to Edinburgh was ², because the rail workers were ³, so we decided to ⁴ and ⁵ there.
 E: Wow, Kevin! It's a long way! What kind of car did you get?
 K: We had a lot of stuff, so we hired a ⁶ The journey was actually fine, but when we arrived, we couldn't find anywhere to ⁷, because of the Festival.
 E: So, what did you do?
 K: Went to Colin's, and borrowed some ⁸ Fortunately, there's a great system of ⁹ from his place into the centre.

2 Underline the word or phrase that does not complete the sentence.

- We got off the *bus / train / car*
- Our flight was *delayed / crashed / cancelled*
- The coach stopped at the *service station / underground / traffic lights*
- We hired a *vehicle / van / licence*
- We gave a tip to the *waiter / policeman / taxi driver*
- The diversion caused *terrible delays / a website / a traffic jam*

GRAMMAR Quantifiers with countable and uncountable nouns

3 Which of these sentences talk about the most cars and which talks about the fewest? Rank them from 1 to 3.

- There aren't many cars on the road.
- There are a lot of cars on the road.
- There aren't any cars on the road.

4 Rewrite the sentences from exercise A but use 'traffic' instead of 'cars'.

-
-
-

Language note

Uncountable nouns have no plural form and are not used with *a / an*. In the exercise above, remember that 'cars' are countable but 'traffic' is uncountable. Other common uncountable nouns include *transport, money, information, homework and food*.

5 Rewrite these sentences, replacing the underlined word with the word in brackets.

- There isn't much parking in this part of town. (car parks)
- There's a strike today, so there are no buses or trains. (public transport)
- It's very polluted here because there are a lot of factories in this area. (industry)
- I can't lend you anything because I've only got a few coins on me. (money)
- She's in a terrible hurry because she only has a little time before her bus arrives. (minutes)

6 Choose the correct words in this conversation.

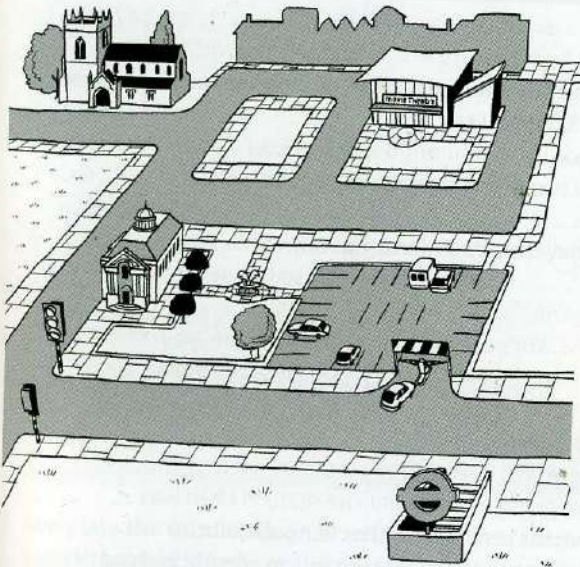
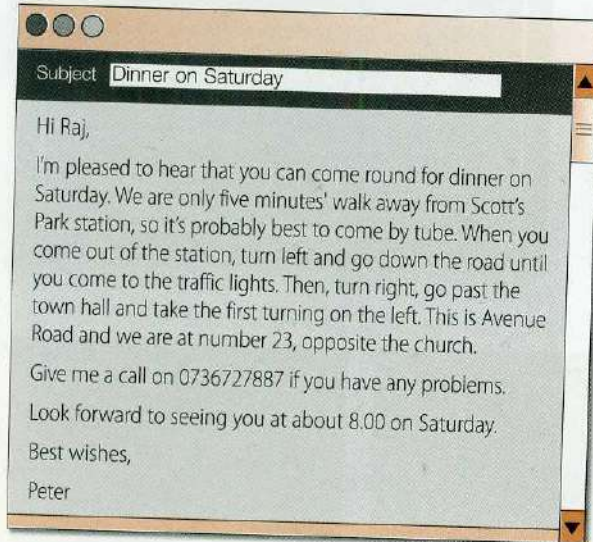
- A: How *many / much* times have you been to Japan?
 B: I've only been there once.
 A: How *many / much* time did you spend there?
 B: I was there for a week.
 A: Did you enjoy it there?
 B: I had a great time but I don't speak *any / no* Japanese so I had a *few / little* problems communicating.
 A: Did you eat *much / many* Japanese food?
 B: Oh, yes. I ate a *lot of / much* fish.

DEVELOPING WRITING

An email – giving directions

7 Read the email and answer these questions.

- 1 What has Peter invited Raj to?
- 2 What's the best way of getting to Peter's home?
- 3 What is the route from Scott's Park tube station to Peter's home? Draw it on the map.
- 4 What should Raj do if he has a problem?



8 You live at 15, High Street, opposite the cinema. Invite a friend called Martine to lunch at 1.00 on Friday. Use the map to give her directions from the tube station. Include:

- From, To
- A greeting and introduction
- Information about your address and directions
- What to do if there's a problem
- Closing (e.g. Best wishes, Love, etc.)

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 3

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 3 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

licence	roundabout	town hall	traffic jam
playground	council		

- 1 The local are discussing plans to build a ring road.
- 2 Avoid the town centre, as there's a huge with long queues.
- 3 You should leave the at the third exit.
- 4 There's a lovely children's in the centre of the park.
- 5 The policeman stopped him and asked to see his driving
- 6 When you reach the main square, you'll see the directly in front of you.

2 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 He saw what happened, so he reported | a car at the airport. |
| 2 The car hit him as he was crossing | b him a lot of money. |
| 3 I had an accident on | c missed the train. |
| 4 She got stuck in traffic and | d the way to work. |
| 5 He was angry because they charged | e the accident to the police. |
| 6 She decided to hire a | f the road outside the police station. |

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1 She looked at the board to see which gate she should go to. | DEPART |
| 2 I drove as fast as I could, but I was too late to catch my flight. | FORTUNATE |
| 3 We had to wait an hour because the flight was | DELAY |
| 4 The train was late leaving, so he missed his | CONNECT |
| 5 It took them ages to go through | SECURE |
| 6 As a result of the strike, there's no underground rail today. | SERVE |

4 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F), and correct the ones that are false.

- 1 A *subway* is a way for people to walk under a main road.
- 2 When your flight is *cancelled*, you cannot travel.
- 3 A *coach* is something that is built to remind people of an important event.
- 4 Buses, trains, trams and taxis are all kinds of *public transport*.
- 5 A *monument* is something you keep clothes in.
- 6 If you *keep walking* along a road, you continue on the same road.
- 7 When you *hire* something, you buy it.

Score ___/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again. Compare your scores.

VOCABULARY Restaurants

1 Write the correct type of food under each photo.

seafood Italian fast food Chinese Japanese Mexican



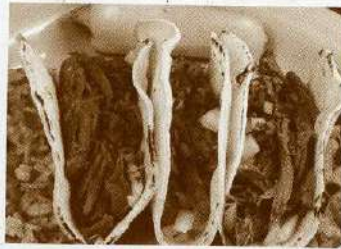
1



2



3



4



5



6

2 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 That Turkish café is really good value | a food, but sometimes you need something quick and easy. |
| 2 I'm not fond of fast | b dishes, especially Mexican food. |
| 3 I love all kinds of spicy | c Italian food. I prefer Indian. |
| 4 To be honest, I don't really like | d bar in Camden. I've heard it's really good. |
| 5 I'm going to try out that new sushi | e for money. You can eat well for under £20. |

3 Place the following words and phrases under the correct heading below.

choice	busy	disgusting	delicious
place	portions	value	rude
big selection	staff	fixed menu	options
view	dishes	plenty to choose from	
friendly	terrace	expensive	

describing food	describing service	describing the restaurant

Learner tip

This unit is about **food and eating**. This is your main theme.

In your notebook, write that as a page title, then make a list of smaller groups, like the boxes in exercise 3 below, to help you remember words which we use to talk about a particular function connected with food, e.g. **types of food, cooking methods**, etc.

4 Complete the sentences below with words or phrases from exercise 3.

- The Spanish restaurant down the road's good. They do a of both meat and vegetarian, so there's
- The food at that French restaurant was, but the were really small, so we were still hungry afterwards.
- The Thai Pot's always really and you often have to wait to get a seat, but the food is good and it's good for money.
- We sat outside on the, and the from up there was amazing! We could see all over the city.
- I'm not going there again! The seafood I had was, and when I sent it back, the chef was quite
- Hey, let's go to that Greek on Abbey Road. The are very in there, and it's got a great atmosphere.
- That diner's got a, so there isn't much, but the food's generally good.
- Well, it's very so we don't go often, but there are some on the menu that are cheaper.

GRAMMAR Present perfect simple

5 Match the sentences (1–6) with the correct response (a–f).

- 1 I've never eaten grilled squid before.
 - 2 Have you read *Great Cooking At Home*?
 - 3 Have you tried that recipe for vindaloo curry yet?
 - 4 Have you been to that Chinese restaurant, The Lantern?
 - 5 I've only eaten ekmek in a restaurant. Is it easy to make?
 - 6 I've never been to the city centre.
- a Well, I can show you how to make it, if you like.
 - b Oh, don't bother! It's too crowded and polluted!
 - c No, I've never heard of it, to be honest. Is it good?
 - d Why don't you try some? It's delicious!
 - e Yes, I found some really great recipes in there!
 - f Yes, but I'm afraid it wasn't spicy enough for Kevin!

6 Put the words in brackets into the correct form of the present perfect simple.

- 1 (you ever eat) snails?
- 2 (you be) to that Italian restaurant on the corner yet? It's great. I (be) there three times!
- 3 (you ever try) falafel? They're a kind of vegetarian meatball, made with chick-peas.
- 4 This is the first time I (make) Thai food. I hope you like it!
- 5 Bob (never eat) curry before. He doesn't eat much spicy food.
- 6 (you read) that cookbook I gave you yet?

Language note

When we talk about travel experiences, we use 'be'. e.g.
*Have you ever **been** to Niagara Falls? I've **been** to Alaska twice. I've never **been** abroad.*

7 Complete the mini-dialogues with the correct form of the present perfect simple or the past simple.

- 1 Kate: (you be) to Edinburgh before?
 Gunter: Yes, I two years ago. How about you?
 Kate: I (never be) here before! It's really cold!
 Gunter: (you visit) the castle yet?
 Kate: No, I I must go. How about you?
 Gunter: I (go) yesterday. It was amazing!
- 2 Yuri: (you be) to any good restaurants yet?
 Xavier: Well, I (go) to The Apple last night.
 Yuri: Oh, that famous chef's place? (he be) there?

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Suggestions

8 Unscramble the suggestions.

- 1 A: that Thai / the corner / how / round / place / about / ?
 B: To be honest, I don't really feel like spicy food today.
 A: could / we / instead / well / that vegetarian / in the square / go / restaurant / to
- 2 C: sushi bar / how / new / about / on Samson Street / the / ?
 D: To be honest, I don't really feel like Japanese food.
 C: we / that Greek / well / instead / restaurant / could / to / go / down the road
- 3 E: seafood / in / about / restaurant / how / that / the centre / ?
 F: To be honest, I don't really feel like fish today.
 E: instead / go / could / The Cooking Pot / well / to / we / on James Street

9 Complete the conversation with the responses (a–f).

- a Great idea! I love their curries.
 - b Yes, but they haven't got enough vegetarian dishes on the menu. I don't want to eat spaghetti with tomato sauce again!
 - c It'll be too noisy to talk in there, then! I fancy going somewhere quiet, so we can chat.
 - d I'm not sure. Have you been to La Vita Bella yet?
 - e Yes, I do.
 - f We'll have to book though.
- A: Where do you want to go tonight?
 B: ¹
- A: Oh, I went there last week. We waited an hour to get a table! That's too long to wait in a restaurant that doesn't take bookings. I'm not going there again! How about Neil's Kitchen? There have been good reviews of that.
 B: ²
- A: Oh, yes! I forgot you don't eat meat! Do you like seafood?
 B: ³
- A: Well, there's a nice little fish restaurant in the centre.
⁴ It gets busy.
 B: ⁵
- A: Well, then we could go to the Indian down the road instead. That doesn't get busy until the pubs close.
 B: ⁶

READING

- 1 Read the blog about sandwiches around the world. Match each blog entry with the correct country below.

Vietnam Ireland Austria France

A B C D

- 2 In which description(s) does the writer mention that:

- 1 the sandwiches are not expensive?
- 2 the bread is made in the shop?
- 3 the place gets very busy?
- 4 the restaurant is very old?
- 5 the ingredients used are local?

Learner tip

When you answer questions about a text, do not worry about unknown words. In the text opposite, a lot of words refer to ingredients for making food. You can understand from the context that they are ingredients, but it is not necessary to know exactly what they are.

- 3 Match the words from the blog (1–10) with the definitions (a–j).

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1 recipe (line 1) | a fashionable and modern |
| 2 falafel (line 8) | b one food item which is used with others to make a dish |
| 3 the premises (line 19) | c what is placed inside a sandwich |
| 4 variety (line 20) | d not very expensive |
| 5 ingredient (line 20) | e the restaurant/shop building |
| 6 discount (line 32) | f instructions for making a dish |
| 7 reasonable (prices) (line 34) | g a special design which a shop or business uses |
| 8 trendy (line 42) | h chickpea balls |
| 9 filling (line 43) | i special low price |
| 10 logo (line 48) | j a number of different things |

- 4 Underline the words that can go with these phrases.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 freshly made | <i>coffee / orange juice / newspaper / ice cream</i> |
| 2 extremely popular | <i>football team / restaurant / person / Mexican</i> |
| 3 a variety of | <i>food / ingredients / dishes / colours</i> |
| 4 fresh | <i>fruit / fish / water / table / vegetables / bread</i> |
| 5 food | <i>fast / spicy / health / fruit / junk / frozen</i> |
| 6 price | <i>reasonable / discount / full / half</i> |

Pete's Eats Blog

I travel a lot in my search for new and exciting recipes, and I suddenly realised that the one thing I haven't talked about is one of the most common lunchtime foods in the world. Yes, you guessed it: the sandwich!

A L'As du Falafel – Paris

If you're looking for a cheap but tasty meal in Paris, then make this your first choice. Be prepared to wait in line at lunchtime, however, as it's extremely popular! The falafel sandwich here is unbeatable, with grilled aubergine, cabbage, hummus, tahini and hot sauce accompanying the delicious chickpea balls. You can either buy to take away or choose to sit in the small space available for diners.



Falafel sandwich

B Banhmi Bistro – Ho Chi Minh City

Banh mi sandwiches, pronounced bun mee, are Vietnamese sandwiches served in a French baguette. One of the best places that serves them is the Banhmibistro in Ho Chi Minh City.

The bread is freshly baked on the premises, and you can choose from a variety of native Vietnamese ingredients, such as coriander, fish sauce, pickled carrots, radishes and hot peppers, to fill your banh mi. A personal favourite is the Bistro Special, which contains a delicious variety of meats such as barbecue pork, ham and pâté.



Banh mi sandwich

C O'Briens Sandwich Bar – Dublin

These people have mastered the art of sandwich-making! They use wonderfully thick slices of fresh bread, and fill them with a wide variety of tasty ingredients. The turkey and brie sandwich with cranberry is excellent!

The good news is they offer discount prices for students, and their full prices are reasonable, too! The business is growing fast, with sandwich bars in several different countries, so I hope this doesn't mean that their quality will suffer!



Turkey and brie sandwich

D The Black Camel – Vienna

This is actually a famous family-owned restaurant, which has existed since 1618. Many Viennese eat here regularly. The restaurant food is expensive, but the trendy delicatessen sells deliciously fresh sandwiches at reasonable prices. Popular fillings include minced blood sausage, herring salad, mushroom salad and ham and lentils.

Tourists can pay a bit extra, and buy a packed lunch in a souvenir box decorated with the restaurant's logo of a black camel wearing a headdress.



Herring salad sandwich

VOCABULARY Describing food

5 Match the types of food (1–6) with the descriptions (a–f).

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 potato | 4 mango |
| 2 courgette | 5 garlic |
| 3 squid | 6 mushroom |

- a It's a kind of fruit. It's large and yellow, almost orange in colour. It's got a sweet taste. You usually eat it raw.
- b It's a small, brownish grey fungus. It grows in the ground. It's quite soft. You usually eat it fried or grilled. It is often used in salads or on pizzas.
- c It's a kind of seafood. It has a long, soft body, and ten small arms, called tentacles. It has a mild taste, and you usually eat it fried or grilled. You sometimes cook it in a sauce.
- d It's a kind of vegetable. It's hard, and white on the inside with a thin, brown skin. It has a mild taste, and you can eat it fried, boiled or roasted. It accompanies most meat and fish dishes.
- e It's small, white and hard. It has a very strong taste. You usually add it to cooked food to give it more flavour, but some people eat it raw in salads, or on a piece of bread and butter.
- f It's a kind of vegetable. It's long, with a green skin. It's not very hard, and has a mild taste. You usually eat it fried or boiled. You can add it to most vegetable dishes and salads.

PRONUNCIATION

6 4.1 Listen to the words on the left. Then choose the words in the line with the same sound.

1 would /ʊ/	count	could	book
2 shall /æ/	champagne	chant	pancake
3 enough /ʌ/	rough	cough	hungry
4 juice /u:/	root	boil	fruit

7 4.2 Listen to all the words and check your answers.

8 Practise saying the words.

GRAMMAR Offers, requests, suggestions

9 Match the following questions with their function.

- | | | | |
|---|-----------|---------------------|--------------|
| a offer | b request | c asking permission | d suggestion |
| 1 Could I have the day off, please, Mr Brown? | ..... |  |  |
| 2 Shall I take your coat, madam? | ..... |  |  |
| 3 Could I have my steak well done, please? | ..... |  |  |
| 4 Shall we order drinks first? | ..... |  |  |
| 5 Shall I bring you some water, sir? | ..... |  |  |
| 6 Shall we order a dessert? | ..... |  |  |
| 7 Could I borrow your phone to call the babysitter? | ..... |  |  |
| 8 Could you bring us the bill, please? | ..... |  |  |

Language note

We usually make a request when we want somebody to do something for us. e.g. *Could you make me a coffee, please?*

We ask permission when we want to do something but are not sure if it's acceptable. e.g. *Could I open the window, please?*

10 Use the prompts to complete the mini-dialogues.

- 1 Waiter: Would you like me to bring you some wine, sir?
Guest: (don't drink alcohol / bottle of sparkling water, please?)
- 2 Manager: Right, Juan. Could you clear those tables, and set them for tomorrow, please?
Juan: Er ... Mrs Kent (leave early, please?)
My mother has asked me to collect my brother from his judo lesson.
- 3 Man: Shall we go for a Chinese meal, then?
Woman: (don't feel like / pizza, instead?)
- 4 Man: Oh! I can't find my car keys.
Waiter: They fell on the floor. (help you / look / them, sir?)



GRAMMAR *too and not ... enough*

- 1 Complete the sentences with *too* or *not ... enough* and the adjectives in the box.

hard cooked expensive big spicy chilled

- I can't eat this soup. It's! Bring me some cold water, please!
- This bread isn't very fresh. It's to eat!
- This fish is not It's still raw!
- This wine isn't Could you bring us another bottle?
- This is! You've overcharged us!
- Waiter! This table is for six people. Could you give us another, please?

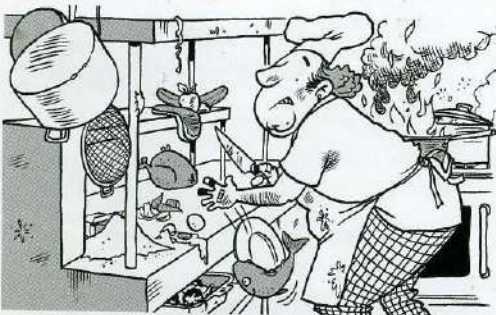
- 2 Complete the following dialogue with a suitable phrase from the box.

wasn't hot enough haven't been has had
too slow I've never heard have you tried

- A: Where shall we go then?
B: How about Joe's Place? We ¹ there for ages!
A: I know, but the service was ² the last time we went, remember. Let's go somewhere new.
³ that Mexican restaurant on Keene Street?
B: No, ⁴ of it. What's it like?
A: Well, the chilli ⁵ for me, but you'll like it. And they do really nice tacos.
B: Mm, you know I don't like spicy food! The new fish restaurant in Hooton ⁶ some good reviews. We could go there.
A: OK, then. Let's go there.

- 3 Say what is wrong with this kitchen. Write sentences using the words below.

dirty room untidy staff work



Language note

Not ... enough + noun: When the phrase is followed by a noun, 'not' comes before the verb. e.g. We **don't have** enough food to eat. You **haven't made** enough paella. We don't say 'We have not enough food.'

LISTENING

- 4 4.3 Listen to two people having a meal in a restaurant. What kind of restaurant are they in?

- 5 4.3 Listen again. What do the couple order to eat and drink? Underline the correct answers.

moussaka	tzatziki	water
wine	spetsofai	souvlaki

- 6 4.4 Listen to the rest of the conversation, and answer the questions.

1 Why doesn't Claire want to eat the spetsofai?

2 Does Claire like the tzatziki? Why (not)?

3 Do they order a dessert?

- 7 How do Socrates and Claire feel about the food? Tick (✓) the best answer.

	is enthusiastic	likes some of it	doesn't like it
Socrates			
Claire			

- 8 Match the descriptions (a-d) in the menu below with the correct dish (1-4).

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1 <i>Greek salad</i> | a yoghurt and cucumber salad, flavoured with garlic |
| 2 <i>tzatziki</i> | b spicy sausage with green peppers |
| 3 <i>souvlaki</i> | c tomatoes, cucumber, peppers and olives, with goat's cheese |
| 4 <i>spetsofai</i> | d small pieces of grilled pork served on a stick |

DEVELOPING WRITING

A review – a restaurant

- 9 Holly writes a food and eating blog for her local newspaper's website. Read Holly's reviews of two restaurants below.

1 Which restaurant did she think was good?

2 Which restaurant did she think was poor?

VOCABULARY

Places and equipment

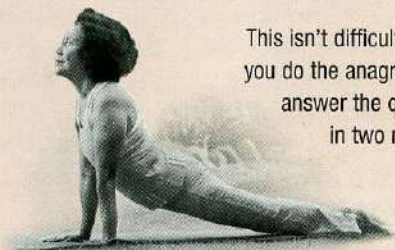
1 Write the place next to the correct activity.

court pitch track pool course river gym studio

- 1 You play golf on a
- 2 You go fishing on a
- 3 You do dance class at a
- 4 You play football on a
- 5 You go swimming in a
- 6 You play tennis on a
- 7 You do yoga in a
- 8 You go running on a

2 Read the text below and answer the questions.

The Two-Minute Test



This isn't difficult but can you do the anagrams and answer the questions in two minutes?



Ready!
Steady!
Go!

ceand obotfla etma minmwisg
ntneis eamg uinnrng ptssor gear
hsifgni flog wingrda

- 1 You play this sport outside, with two or four players. You hit a ball over a net with a racket.
- 2 You need a set of clubs to play this sport.
- 3 Salsa, tango and waltz are all kinds of ...
- 4 You need paper and pencils to do this activity.
- 5 If you do this activity on a track, you must wear special shoes, but if you do it on the road, you can wear trainers.
- 6 This activity needs time, patience and a good rod.
- 7 To do this sport you must wear trunks, a cap and goggles to protect your eyes from the chlorine in the pool.
- 8 Eleven players make up a
- 9 Rackets, bats and clubs are all types of
- 10 Which word can you *not* use to describe gear?
equipment kit game clothes

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Introducing negative comments

3 Complete the negative comments.

- 1 A: Did you enjoy the film?
B: I have to say, (acting / not good)
- 2 A: What did you think of the match?
B: To be honest,
(I / be / disappointed / Chelsea / not / win)
- 3 A: What was the book like?
B: I must admit,
(I / not / like / romantic novels)
- 4 A: Do you want to go swimming?
B: To be honest,
(I / can't stand / swim)
- 5 A: We could play tennis on Saturday.
B: I have to say, (I / useless at tennis)
- 6 A: I know, how about playing golf?
B: I must admit,
(think / golf / boring)

4 Read the conversation. Write *to be honest*, *I have to say* or *I must admit* in each gap 1–3. For gaps 4–6, complete the phrases.

- Anil: Phew! I'm exhausted! I've just been to my first Tai Chi lesson. It's the strangest form of exercise I've ever tried!
- Henny: Did you enjoy it, then?
- Anil: I'm not sure, really, ¹, it was more difficult than I expected. It's actually quite hard to do the exercises slowly and correctly.
- Henny: So, are you going to continue doing it?
- Anil: Well, ², I think I prefer team sports. I think I'm going to join a football club instead.
- Henny: ³, I'm not surprised. I didn't think you'd like it!
- Anil: So, what about you, Henny? Did you go with Dae to play tennis?
- Henny: Yes, I did, actually.
- Anil: And did you like it?
- Henny: To be honest, ⁴ (too difficult). I couldn't hit the ball well. Dae is good at it, but she's very fit, and she's taken lessons.
- Anil: So, what are you going to do?
- Henny: Well, I have to say, ⁵
(prefer / dancing). I must admit, ⁶
(not / like / sport much any more). I want to get fit, though, so I might join a dance class and learn the tango.

5 5.1 Listen and check your ideas for exercise 4.

GRAMMAR Plans and arrangements

6 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 I'm thinking of going to | a not going to do anything this evening. |
| 2 If the weather's good tomorrow, | b to join a Pilates class. |
| 3 I'm exhausted! I'm | c the cinema this evening. Do you want to come? |
| 4 Nontos phoned earlier. | d I might come with you. |
| 5 I'm going to go to the gym this afternoon, | e I might go shopping. |
| 6 That's a good idea! If I'm free, | f Ann and I are meeting him at the pub later. |

7 Choose the correct form to complete the following sentences.

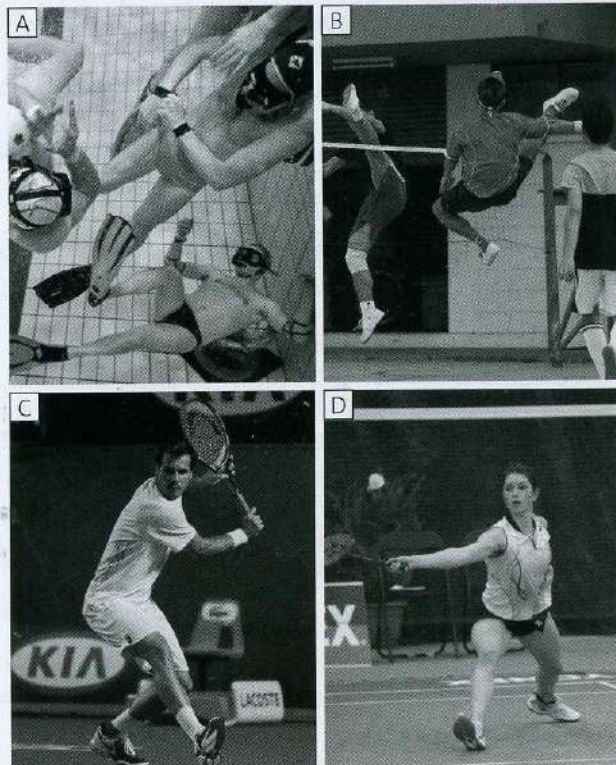
In some cases, both forms are possible.

- We're meeting / We might meet* at the cinema at 7 o'clock. The film starts at 7.15. Do you want to come?
- I'm going / I'm thinking of going* to Paris at the weekend. Do you think I should?
- A: What *are you doing / might you do* at the weekend?
B: I don't know. *I'm going / I might go* to see my grandmother.
- A: Kimbo, I won't come shopping with you today. The weather's so nice, *I might do / I'm going to do* some gardening. It might rain tomorrow!
B: Oh! OK, then. I don't fancy going on my own, so *I might do / I'm doing* some work instead.
- A: *Might you come / Are you going to come* for a meal with us later?
B: I might. What time *are you meeting / are you going to meet*?
- I'm watching / I'm going to watch* a DVD tonight.

8 Complete the mini-dialogues. Use a suitable form – *might*, *present continuous* or *going to* – with the verb in brackets.

- A: Right, Ken! We Anil at 5 o'clock outside the stadium. The match starts at 5.30, so don't be late! (meet)
- A: Jorge! for a drink after work? (you come)
B: I don't know, Dae. I home and have an early night. I'm exhausted. (go)
- A: Aneli, you haven't worn those for ten years! What? (you / do)
B: I running, and lose weight before our holiday! (go)
- We a barbecue this evening and look at those clouds! It's going to rain! (have) What? The house is too small for 20 people! (we/do)

LISTENING



9 Match the sports with the photographs above.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------|-------------|-------|
| 1 sepak takraw | ..... | 3 badminton | ..... |
| 2 underwater rugby | ..... | 4 tennis | ..... |

10 5.1 Listen to three friends talking about their plans to get fit. What sport does each person decide to do?

Dave:

Beret:

Heidi:

11 5.1 Listen again and answer the questions.

- What type of sport does Heidi like?
.....
- Why is Heidi not happy with Dave?
.....
- Why doesn't Beret want to try Heidi's sport?
.....
- Why isn't underwater rugby a violent sport?
.....
- Do you play sepak takraw with your legs and feet or your arms and legs?
.....
- Why does Beret decide to go with David?
.....

VOCABULARY Sports and games

1 Choose the correct verb in *italics* in the following sentences:

- Liverpool *won* / *beat* Juventus 2–0 yesterday.
- Gerrard *scored* / *kicked* both goals.
- In the Chelsea–Manchester City match last night, Chelsea *drew* / *won* 3–2.
- When I last *scored* / *timed* myself running, I ran three miles in ten minutes.
- My dad has always *beaten* / *supported* Liverpool, but to be honest, I prefer Arsenal.
- In rugby, players *throw* / *kick* the ball when they pass it to their team mates.

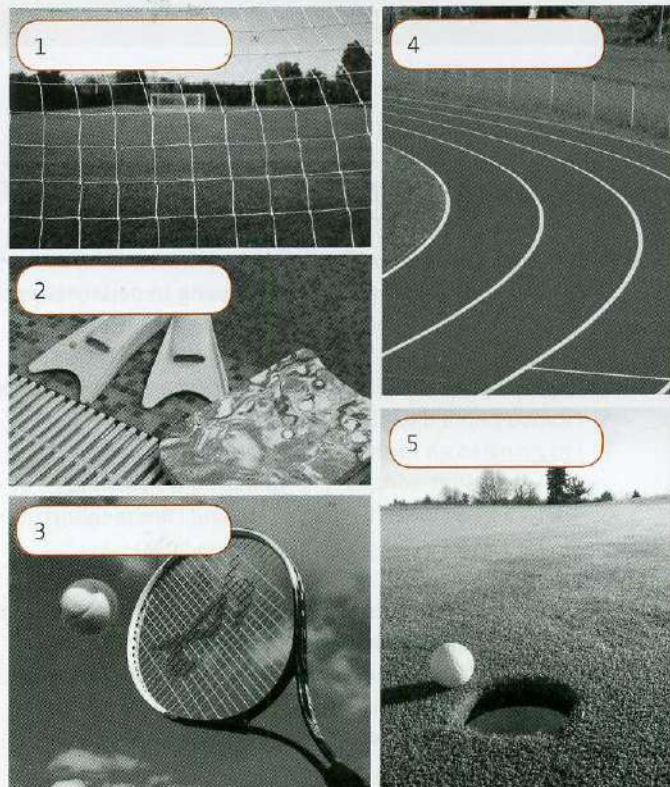
2 Match words from boxes A and B to write a list of ten sporting collocations. Some words in A are used more than once.

A	football	running	tennis	golf
	swimming	dance	sports	
B	pool	event	racket	pitch
	course	class	track	gear
	clubs	court		

3 Label the items from exercise B in the photographs.

4 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 I'm going to try out the new 18-hole golf | a events on in the area this weekend? |
| 2 Jim, have you got your swimming | b racket, and I'm playing in a tournament in half an hour! |
| 3 Are there any good sports | c class at 7.30 this evening? |
| 4 Alice, haven't you got a dance | d course at Bagshot this afternoon. |
| 5 Mum, I can't find my tennis | e track near here? I've brought my trainers. |
| 6 Is there a good running | f gear ready? It's time to go. |



GRAMMAR Superlatives

5 Look at the spelling rules in the Language note. Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets:

- The (exciting) thing I've ever done was jump from an aeroplane with a parachute.
- The (big) party I've ever had was for my 21st birthday, when I invited 100 people.
- The (easy) exam I've ever taken was my driving test. I passed first time!
- The (good) holiday I've ever had was in Thailand two years ago. I met my girlfriend there and fell in love!
- The (expensive) car I've ever bought was my BMW.
- The (hard) thing I've ever had to do was break up with my last boyfriend. He was really upset, and I felt guilty.
- The (bad) thing I've ever done was cheat in an exam at school. I got 80%, but I'd copied from my neighbour's paper.
- The (popular) football team in my country is Juventus.
- The (fit) guy I know is my break-dance instructor.
- The (successful) woman I know is my mum. She runs her own business, goes to the gym twice a week, and still finds time for us!

Language note

Remember how to form superlative adjectives:

- words of one syllable take **-est** e.g. *old* – *the oldest*
- words of three syllables or more take **the most**, or **the least** before them e.g. *intelligent* – *the most intelligent*
- Some words of two syllables take **the + -est** e.g. *pretty* – *the prettiest*. Others take **the most**, **the least** e.g. *aware* – *the most aware*

Always check the comparative and superlative forms of two-syllable adjectives as you learn them.

6 Write sentences with a superlative + the present perfect.

e.g. It / bad / film / we / ever see.

It's the worst film we've ever seen.

1 This / expensive / car / I / ever buy.

2 This / exciting / sport / I / ever try.

3 That / big / pizza / I / ever see.

4 That / good / game / he / ever play.

5 She / successful / tennis player / I / ever know.

6 That / easy / game / I / ever / win.

7 Complete the sentences in the factsheet with the superlative of the adjectives in brackets.

8 Complete the factsheet with the missing information (a-g) from the box below.

98,772 people	594	3,000 miles
31 hours	\$132 million	24 hours
8 days		

PRONUNCIATION

9 Place the groups of words under the correct symbols.

/ɪ/	/ei/	/æ/	/ist/	/i:/

1 largest cyclist fastest

2 challenging marathon badminton

3 ski easy team

4 win instruct business

5 play break race

10 5.2 Listen and check.

11 Practise saying the words. Then, add the following words to the table.

stadium	interesting	longest	complete
game	pretty	exam	achieve

SPORTS FACTSHEET

1 The ¹ (long) aerobics class lasted for ^a and took place in a shopping centre car park in Colombia.

2 The world's ² (large) football stadium is Camp Nou in Barcelona, Spain. It can seat ^b

3 The world's ³ (challenging) bicycle race is Race Across America (RAAM). It covers about ^c

4 The ⁴ (fast) cyclist ever to complete the RAAM is Pete Penseyres. He covered 3,107 miles in ^d , 9 hours and 47 minutes in 1986.

5 Cristiano Ronaldo became the world's ⁵ (expensive) football player after his Real Madrid transfer of ^e

6 The ⁶ (large) ski lesson was attended by ^f skiers, who were instructed by Hansjürg Gredig (Switzerland) of the Swiss-Snowsport School at Sam-Heinzenberg (Graubünden), Switzerland, on 23 February 2008.

7 The ⁷ (long) marathon playing tennis (singles) was ^g 35 minutes and 30 seconds and was achieved by George L. Bolter and Athos Rostan III (both USA), in Hickory, NC, USA, on 8-9 November 2008.



VOCABULARY Word families

- 1 Write the noun forms of the adjectives below. Check your spelling.

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
tired	<i>tiredness</i>	homeless	
happy		weak	
aware		ill	
conscious		lazy	
fit		mad	

- 2 Complete the text with the correct adjective or noun form of the words from the box.

aware mad weak lazy population homeless

Many cities are over-populated, and one of the biggest problems facing them is ¹ There are just not enough homes for everyone. London, for example, is the most heavily-² city in Europe, with almost 5,000 people per square kilometre.

Some people believe that homeless people are ³ and that they don't work. This is a simplistic view, because many homeless people have jobs, but the high cost of living in major cities means that they can't afford the rent.

Shelter, the charity for the homeless, is trying to raise people's ⁴ of the problem. 'Nobody wants to be on the streets,' says one spokesman. 'It's complete ⁵ to think that these people are lazy and ⁶ There are whole families that need help. The government must provide more homes, with rents that people can afford to pay.'

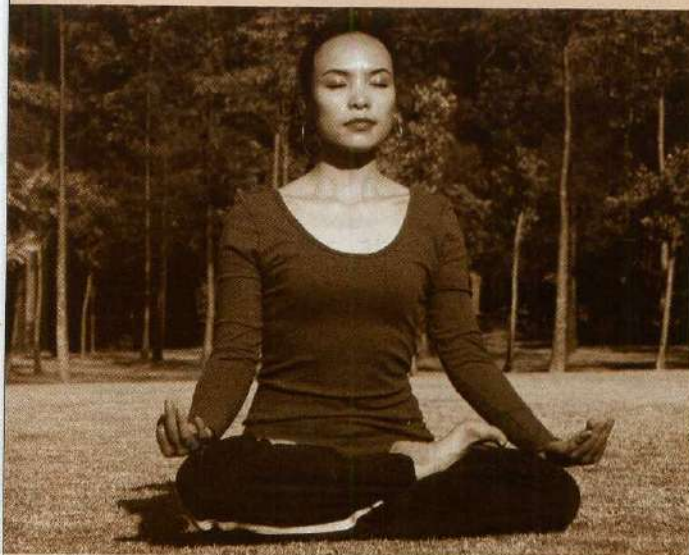


READING

- 3 Read the blog entry about three ways to relax. Match one of the techniques with the photograph.
- 4 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).
- All three relaxation techniques ask you to breathe correctly.
 - The most complicated technique is the yoga technique.
 - The yoga technique works best if you are alone and sitting down.
 - The guided imagery technique asks you to look at a picture.
 - The guided imagery technique does not work in a crowded room.
 - The progressive muscle technique asks you to focus on your body.

Feeling Stressed Out?

Today I'm going to look at stress. Most people have some basic strategies for dealing with stress: they might go for a walk, sit and listen to some relaxing music, have a hot bath, or take a nap. These all help. But today here are my top three tips that will really relax your mind and your body. So here we go.



Tip number 1: Yoga breathing technique

This is one of the easiest ways to relax. The yoga breathing technique is most effective when you are in a quiet place, and sitting in the well-known 'lotus position'. But you can also do it at the office, on the bus or in the park. Sit up or stand up straight. Choose a point to look at, and focus on it while you are breathing. Close your mouth and breathe in through your nose slowly and deeply, counting up to four. Hold your breath for four seconds, and then breathe out slowly, with your mouth closed. Again, count to four, and imagine all the stress and tension of the day leaving your body. Repeat the exercise up to ten times.

Tip number 2: Guided imagery relaxation technique

Another simple way to relax is to use the guided imagery technique. Find a quiet place and get into a comfortable position. Breathe deeply and slowly, and imagine you are breathing in peace and breathing out stress. Once you feel more relaxed, think of a picture of the most relaxing place you can imagine. Perhaps it's a beach on a tropical island, or a cosy armchair by an open fire. Allow yourself to daydream. When you feel relaxed, count down from ten, and tell yourself that when you get to 'one' you'll feel calm and refreshed. It really works!

Tip number 3: Progressive muscle relaxation technique

This is one of my personal favourites. You tense and then relax the muscles in different parts of your body. This really helps ease tension and makes you relax. You might find that the most enjoyable time to do this is in the evening. Sit down or lie down in a quiet place. Start with the feet. Tense up the muscle group in the feet, and hold for five seconds. Breathe in as you tense up. Then, release the tension all at once, and breathe out. Stay relaxed for ten seconds. Work your way up the body from one muscle group to the next. Repeat the exercise. Continue doing this until you have completed the whole body.

Right! Go ahead and try one of them! Enjoy yourself! Then let me know what you think by posting a comment below ...

DEVELOPING WRITING

A blog – your favourite game

An online games magazine has invited readers to send a description of their favourite game or sport to their weekly blog. They want to know how and why they started the game, if they play with others, when and where, and what future plans they have for this game.

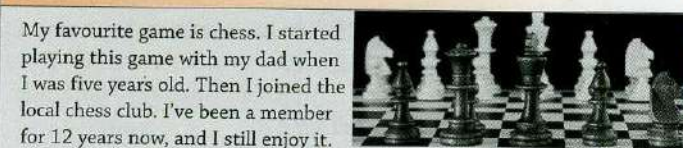
5 Read one reader's blog entry.

- 1 What's the name of his favourite game?
.....
- 2 How did he start playing the game?
.....
- 3 How long has he been a club member?
.....
- 4 What's he going to do in the future?
.....

6 Match the headings with the paragraphs.

- 1 Where, when and who I play with
- 2 Future plans for the game
- 3 How I started playing the game

7 Underline any useful language about a game or a sport.



a My favourite game is chess. I started playing this game with my dad when I was five years old. Then I joined the local chess club. I've been a member for 12 years now, and I still enjoy it.

b I like chess because it's the most exciting game I've ever played. Although it's not a team game, chess can help you meet people. Several of my friends are members of my club. Now I've joined chess.com on the internet, and I play against people from all over the world.

c Next month I'm going to play in my first local tournament, so I'm practising hard. If I do well in that, I might take part in a larger tournament next May. Then ... who knows?!

8 Write your own entry for the blog. Use the notes below to help you, and write three paragraphs, like the model above.

Favourite game blog entry:

My favourite game/sport is ...

I started playing ... when I ...

I like ... because ...

I've joined a ... club.

I play every ... with my friends / partner, etc.

I'm hoping to / thinking of / going to ...

I might ...

1 When and how you started.

2 The rules of the game / sport.

3 Why you like it.

Remember to check your grammar and spelling!

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 5

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 5 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Choose the correct word.

- 1 Hannah *beat* / *won* Xavier at table tennis last night.
- 2 The changing room is really *messy* / *lazy*! Clean it up.
- 3 The team walked onto the football *court* / *pitch* and everyone cheered.
- 4 Winning the game made a *mistake* / *difference* to the team.
- 5 Try to *support* / *prevent* the other team from scoring a goal.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- 1 There's a ban smoking in the gym.
- 2 Ivan is going to race Olivier next.
- 3 They're playing home against Chelsea this weekend.
- 4 She said I cheated chess, and wouldn't play with me.
- 5 I kicked my opponent's leg mistake.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- 1 There is a lot of between the two brothers. RIVAL
- 2 The game was played with stones. ORIGIN
- 3 Dave is very and needs to get more exercise. FIT
- 4 She didn't come again? She's so! FORGET
- 5 You need a lot of to do this sport. STRONG

4 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 She walks at a brisk a track yesterday evening.
- 2 The Olympics always b pace every morning.
- 3 Julios ran three laps c a difficult opponent, but managed to beat her.
- 4 In the final, Keira faced d on Bolt winning the race.
- 5 I'm going to bet e huge crowds.

5 Cross-out the word that does not collocate with the key word.

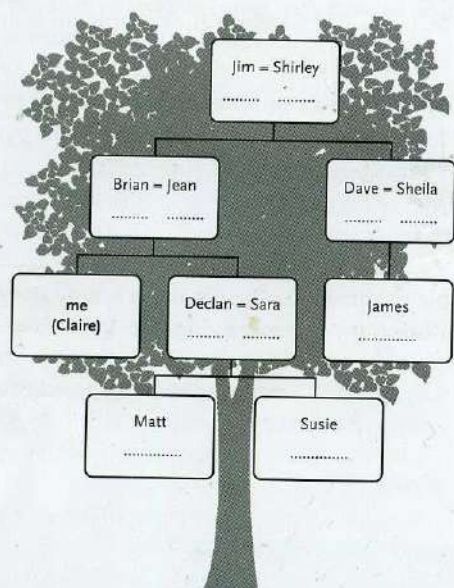
- 1 basketball *match* / *court* / *rod* / *team*
- 2 attract *a crowd* / *scores* / *attention* / *large audiences*
- 3 golf *club* / *course* / *ball* / *racket*
- 4 set *a standard* / *an example* / *a season* / *the pace*
- 5 publish *a book* / *a film* / *a magazine* / *a newspaper*

Score ___/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again.
Compare your scores.

VOCABULARY Family and friends**1** Complete Claire's family tree with the words below.

brother	gran	niece	uncle
dad	cousin	granddad	sister-in-law
nephew	mum	aunt	

**2** Complete Claire's description of her family with words from exercise 1.

We're not a very big family. My ¹ 's name is Brian, and he's a teacher at my school. My ² is a lawyer; she works for a big law firm in the city. I've got one little ³ - I say little, he's 30! He's married. My ⁴ , Sara, is lovely, and we get on well. They've got two children. My ⁵ 's name is Matt, and he's 6. Then my ⁶ , Susie, is 4. I love playing with them. After that, there's just my ⁷ Dave, who's my Dad's brother, his wife, ⁸ Sheila, and their son, James, who is my only ⁹ Oh, and of course there's my ¹⁰ Jim, who is 80 this year. My ¹¹ is organising a surprise party for him. And that's it! There's no one else.

3 Who are they? Complete the definitions with the words below.

girlfriend/boyfriend	flatmate	mother/father-in-law
classmate	colleague	neighbour
ex-wife/husband	partner	

- 1 You were once married to them.
- 2 They live next door.
- 3 You live together as a couple, but are not married.
- 4 You go out with them.
- 5 They are your wife's/husband's parents.
- 6 You were at school together.
- 7 You share an apartment with them.
- 8 You work with them.

GRAMMAR Question formation**4** Complete the questions with the question words. Then answer them about yourself.

How	Why	When	How long
Is	What	How old	Do

- 1 Q: did you start learning English?
A:
- 2 Q: have you known your best friend?
A:
- 3 Q: is your favourite food?
A:
- 4 Q: you like Madonna?
A:
- 5 Q: much do you pay to go to the cinema in your country?
A:
- 6 Q: your hair dark or fair?
A:
- 7 Q: do you like your best friend?
A: Because
- 8 Q: are you? Do you still go to school or college? Or do you work?
A:

5 Correct the mistakes in the following questions.

- 1 Why you like him?
.....
- 2 You have been waiting how long?
.....
- 3 You did like Kerry's new boyfriend?
.....
- 4 When you met your wife?
.....
- 5 How you make that delicious spaghetti dish?
.....
- 6 From where you are?
.....
- 7 How long you have known him?
.....
- 8 Did you met her at university?
.....

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Explaining who people are

6 Match the questions (1–8) with the responses (a–h).

- 1 Who's the boy in the blue shirt?
 - 2 Is the girl with the blond hair your sister?
 - 3 Who's that angry-looking man at the back?
 - 4 Is this woman with the red dress Marisa?
 - 5 Who's this young girl in front of your mum?
 - 6 So, which one is your boyfriend?
 - 7 Is that you when you were young?
 - 8 Is that your dad sitting in the middle?
- a That's Ben, a colleague from work. He's lovely.
 - b That's my little cousin, Vicky.
 - c The gorgeous guy standing on my right.
 - d No, it's my dad's brother, uncle George.
 - e Yes. She loves wearing bright colours.
 - f No, my sister's got red hair. That's my friend, Callie.
 - g That's my ex-husband, Gareth. He hated being in photos.
 - h No, it's my twin sister. People say we look alike.

7 Choose the correct word to complete the conversations.

- 1 A: Who's the woman the dog?
B: That's my cousin Ann.
a having b holding
- 2 A: Who's the man standing to you?
B: That's Bryan, a guy from work.
a behind b next
- 3 A: Which one is Fiona?
B: The girl the green shirt.
a with b of
- 4 A: Is this Ahmed?
B: No. He's the one on the right to my little brother.
a talk b talking
- 5 A: Is your sister in the picture?
B: Yes. She's the one in blue sitting in of John.
a front b back
- 6 A: Who's this lovely guy standing you and your dad?
B: My cousin Anil. He lives in Stockholm.
a next b between
- 7 A: Who's the girl sitting behind you?
B: That's a girl my old school.
I can't remember her name.
a from b at
- 8 A: Who's the child playing with the dog in the photo?
B: That's me I was eight. I really loved that dog.
a when b while



LISTENING

8 Match the following words with the definitions and then check your answers.

- 1 immigrant
- 2 primary school
- 3 secondary school
- 4 field
- 5 harvest

- a piece of land used for farming
- b school for 12–18 year-olds
- c person who comes to live in a country from another country
- d time when farmers collect the foods they grow on the land
- e school for 5–11 year-olds

9 6.1 Listen to three people talk about where they spent their childhood. Decide where each person grew up: A in the country, B by the sea, C in different countries, D in a city.

- Speaker 1 A B C D
Speaker 2 A B C D
Speaker 3 A B C D

10 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 Babur Wahidi went to a multicultural
 - 2 Babur enjoyed being at the school
 - 3 Babur's situation improved at secondary school
 - 4 Joe remembers sometimes feeling lonely
 - 5 Carrie found it difficult to
 - 6 Carrie now has no problem
- a on the farm where he grew up.
 - b because the teachers understood their students' needs.
 - c moving to a different town and starting a new job.
 - d primary school in Bradford.
 - e change school all the time.
 - f after classmates learnt he was good at football.

11 6.1 Listen again and check your answers.

Learner tip

If a listening task asks you to complete a sentence, read through the questions carefully before you listen. Think about what you are going to hear. Listen carefully to the audioscript. Then choose your answers.

GRAMMAR Similarities and contrasts

1 Complete the sentences with *both*, *neither*, *all*, *none*, *whereas* or *but*.

- Sally and Ginny enjoy going to the cinema.
- Sally's favourite actor is Brad Pitt, Ginny prefers Clive Owen.
- Ralph and I like playing sport, but of us likes watching it on TV!
- of my friends are Linkin Park fans. We're going to their concert in September!
- Jane and I are a little lazy, of us likes tidying up our room!
- of us is very patient. We get frustrated easily and shout a lot!
- The two are very different. Zach is very outgoing and friendly, Kevin is rather shy.
- My gran's very practical and makes things, Grandad's rather careless and breaks them!

2 Look at the pictures and complete the description of the three people. Use *all*, *both*, *neither*, *none*, *whereas* and *but*. You may use some words more than once.



Sophia, Vlad and Tom are colleagues and work together in a travel agency. ¹ of them are travelling abroad next week to check out holiday spots for customers. ² Sophia and Tom are going to Paris, ³ Vlad is going to Madrid. They are friends, ⁴ they are quite different from each other. Tom likes driving fast cars but doesn't do much sport, whereas ⁵ Sophia and Vlad are sporty and are interested in health. Sophia is a runner, ⁶ Vlad goes rock climbing. Both Tom and Vlad like watching football on TV, but ⁷ of them likes playing it. Sophia has a dog, but ⁸ of the men likes animals. However, they ⁹ have one thing in common. ¹⁰ of them like doing housework.

VOCABULARY Character and habits

3 Match the adjectives (1–12) with the definitions (a–l).

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1 bright | a. doesn't get angry easily |
| 2 calm | b. always says what he/she thinks |
| 3 confident | c. clever |
| 4 determined | d. expects people to do what he/she says |
| 5 fit | e. can arrange and do things in an ordered way |
| 6 friendly | f. good at making and repairing things |
| 7 open | g. tries very hard to do something well |
| 8 organised | h. not strict |
| 9 patient | i. sure about what he/she can do well |
| 10 practical | j. shows people that he/she likes them |
| 11 soft | k. strong and healthy |
| 12 strict | l. relaxed and quiet, doesn't get upset easily |

4 Underline the correct word in *italics* to complete the sentences.

- Dave's very *strict* / *soft* and doesn't allow his children much freedom.
- Ana Maria made this garden table and chairs. She's so *fit* / *practical*!

3 Bruno is *determined* / *confident* to win the championship this year.

4 Alkis is always *bright* / *friendly* towards new students, and helps them settle in.

5 Stella is always *open* / *calm* in an emergency. I've never seen her panic.

6 Antonio is a great teacher because he's extremely *organised* / *patient* with difficult children.

5 Complete the sentences with the words you didn't use in exercise 4.

- Both boys are very and do well at school.
- Karin is quite, so you feel you can trust her opinion.
- Dad's really and so I can usually get what I want from him.
- I'm not enough to stand in front of people and give a presentation.
- Christina does yoga and goes running every morning, so she's extremely
- Alice runs both a business and a family. She says the secret is to be, and plan your day carefully.

READING

6 Read the two texts below quickly and answer the questions.

- The title of the article is:
 - Book of the month
 - My favourite book
 - This week's top two writers
- The article comes from:
 - a magazine
 - a book
 - a science journal
- The writers come from:
 - Scotland and Australia
 - Zimbabwe and India
 - Botswana and India
- The two writers write books about:
 - sport
 - people
 - studying

7 Read the article again. Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- Alexander McCall Smith grew up in Scotland.
- He taught at the University of Botswana.
- He thinks the people of Botswana are mean.
- Aravind Adiga lives and works in America.
- His book has won an award.
- Both writers write about the goodness in people.

8 Choose a suitable word from the box below to complete the sentences.

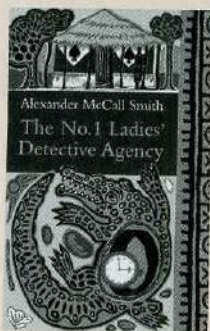
spend human keeps plays paints family

- Laura a diary of all the important things that happen to her each day.
- Everyone is selfish sometimes; it's part of nature!
- The newspaper report an awful picture of children's behaviour in the classroom, but this is not always true.
- I often time fishing with my grandfather at the weekend.
- Mandy and John are both musical. Mandy the piano and John the bassoon.
- At weekends, I enjoy walking in the mountains with friends and

This week's top two writers

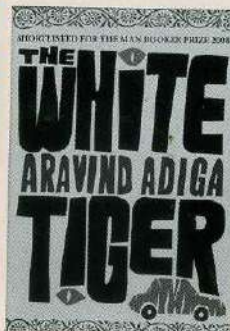
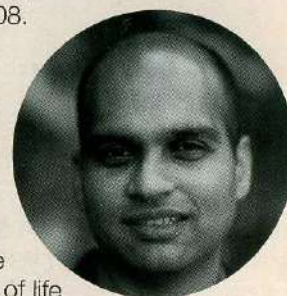
The writer, Alexander McCall Smith was born to Scottish parents in Rhodesia, now Zimbabwe, in 1948. He grew up there, and then moved to Scotland to study law at the University of Edinburgh. Returning to Africa, he taught law at the University of Botswana for a number of years. During this time, he noticed the warmth and kindness of the people of Botswana. He now lives in Scotland with his wife, Elizabeth, and two daughters, Lucy and Emily. Although he travels widely as a writer, his favourite activities include spending time at home with his family, cooking for family and friends and playing the bassoon in the Really Terrible Orchestra.

McCall Smith has written many books, including children's stories, but is best-known for his books about a lady detective in Botswana. Mma Ramotswe, a lady 'of traditional build', likes drinking bush tea and helping people. So, she opens the 'Number One Ladies' Detective Agency', and does just that. There have been several books about her, and each one shows the gentle, funny, and mostly good side of human nature; the side the writer sees in the people of Botswana.



Aravind Adiga was born in southeastern India, the son of a doctor, and grew up in Mangalore and Australia. He studied English Literature at Columbia University in New York and Magdalen College, Oxford. After that Adiga became a journalist with the *Financial Times*. He also worked for *Time* magazine in India and other parts of Asia. After deciding to stay in Mumbai, he wrote a book called *The White Tiger*, which won an important literary award, the Man Booker prize, in 2008.

The book follows the story of its main character, Balram Halwai, who starts life as a servant in modern India, and finally becomes a successful businessman. As he tells his story, Balram shows the reader a part of India that we don't usually see, and the reality of life for the Indian poor. The book paints a picture that is both shocking and powerful. It shows us how difficult it is for many poor people to find a better life in modern India.



How did Adiga, who is from a comfortable middle-class family, create such a realistic story about the poor? He says that as a journalist he travelled widely, and spent a lot of time talking with poor people at railway stations. He kept a diary of those conversations, and used his notes to build the character of Balram.

LISTENING

- 1 **6.2** Listen to a mother talking about her teenage son and daughter. Write down two similarities and two differences between them.



Similarities:

.....

Differences:

.....

- 2 **6.2** Listen again and check your answers.

PRONUNCIATION The weak form of

- 3 **6.3** Listen to the following sentences from Listening exercise 2. Notice how *of* is pronounced in the sentences below.

- 1 Ralph and I both like playing sport, but neither **of** us likes watching it on TV!
- 2 All **of** my friends are Linkin Park fans.
- 3 None **of** us is very patient.

- 4 The word *of* is often pronounced as a weak form so you hear /əv/. Practise saying the following phrases using the weak form /əv/.

- 1 Both **of** us
- 2 All **of** them
- 3 Neither **of** them
- 4 None **of** us
- 5 Many **of** you

- 5 **6.4** Listen, then repeat exercise 2.

VOCABULARY Words with the same verb and noun forms

- 6 Complete the conversations with the correct form of words from the boxes.

email update quote

- A: Hi, Pete. Can you give me an ¹ on that Wilkins project?
 P: Sure, Annie. Sukhi gave them a ² yesterday, and Mr. Wilkins ³ me this morning to say that they accept, and I've just asked Bob to write out the contract.
 A: Great. Keep me posted, please.

update stream (x2)

- O: The TV here is rubbish, so I try to find live ⁴ of my favourite British programmes, and watch them online.
 J: Yeah, me too. My brother ⁵ me on any new series that comes out as well, if he thinks I'll enjoy it.
 O: I hope they ⁶ the match between United and Juventus tonight. I don't want to miss that. Do you fancy watching it together?
 J: Sure! Good idea.

comment (x2) post (x2) quote email

- D: Did you see that ⁷ on Facebook yesterday about the Arctic?
 S: Yes, I ⁸ on it too.
 D: Really? I read some of the ⁹, but didn't see your name.
 S: Perhaps you read it before I did. I sent an ¹⁰ to the organisation, asking for more details, and they ¹¹ figures from a newspaper report. I ¹² a link to the article this morning for anyone interested.



DEVELOPING WRITING

An email – a character reference

- 7 Holly is a teacher at a secondary school. One of her students is going to study in France, and wants to stay with a family. Fill the gaps with words or phrases from the box to complete the email.

also	Thank you for	any more information
Dear	In her spare time	I am sure

From: Holly Dibble
To: Mme Juliette Baton
Subject: Reference for Sue Brown

A ¹ Madame Baton,
B ² your letter, asking me about Sue Brown. I am Sue's French teacher and I have known her for three years. Sue studies hard and her French is good. She wants to go to France because she is keen to practise the language and learn more about life in France.
C Sue is outgoing and makes friends easily. She is ³ kind and caring and popular with her classmates. In fact, she is never mean or selfish.
D ⁴ she plays tennis, and when she's at home, she likes reading books and watching films. Her mother tells me she helps around the house although she doesn't like cooking much! ⁵ you will find her a pleasant and helpful guest.
E Please write back to me if you need ⁶ or have any questions.
F Yours sincerely,
Holly Dibble

- 8 Match the paragraphs in the email to the descriptions.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1 Introduce yourself and talk about your student and why they want to visit the country. | ..... |
| 2 Close the letter. | ..... |
| 3 Tell the reader about the person's character. | ..... |
| 4 Say hello to the reader. | ..... |
| 5 Talk about what the student likes. | ..... |
| 6 Offer more help. | ..... |

- 9 You are a teacher. Your student is studying Polish. He is going to study in Poland for a month and wants to stay with a family. Write an email about him to Mrs Mojewski.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Rashid Kirijian, age 17 | 3 Clever, hardworking, friendly, polite, good company |
| 2 My student for 3 years - wants to be a translator | 4 Likes basketball and swimming, plays water polo |

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 6

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 6 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Choose the correct word.

- I really hate my *colleague* / *cousin* Luigi. He's nothing like the rest of my family.
- My father was a *liberal* / *strict* man, and allowed us a lot of freedom when we were kids.
- I'm upset about that photo you posted. Please *quote* / *remove* it.
- She's often rude like that. Just *ignore* / *delete* her.
- I love his relaxed *character* / *attitude* towards his kids.

2 Complete with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- They live in a poor NEIGHBOUR
- The dances of Crete are difficult to learn. TRADITION
- There is no between online chat and face to face conversation. COMPARE
- I get to paint from watching my kids play. INSPIRE
- Her parents were very when she decided to stop swimming. SUPPORT
- Your comments were rude and! APPROPRIATE
- Adam gave a wonderful in the school play. PERFORM
- Karim is determined to as a dancer. SUCCESS

3 Complete with words from the box.

frustrated divorced on with to know married

- They're finally getting The wedding's next month.
- Ray seems unfriendly, but he's alright when you get him.
- He gets whenever he can't do something on the computer!
- I really get my brother's wife. She's lovely.
- I was sorry to hear they got I still remember their wedding.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- There's a seven-year gap Nick and his brother.
- I'm really close my cousin Sophia.
- Julios reminds me my uncle Benny.
- Victoria took the business when her father died.
- What do the letters ASAP stand?
- Kate, are you still touch with Paolo?
- You need to sort this trouble with Mum, Jake.

Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again. Compare your scores.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Explaining where places are

1 Complete this conversation with the questions in the box.

So what's it like?	Where's it near?
How big is it?	So where are you from?
Really? Whereabouts?	Have you always lived there?
What do you like most about living there?	
And is there anything you don't like about it?	

- A: ¹
- B: I'm from Italy, the south of Italy actually.
- A: ²
- B: I don't think you'll know it. It's a place called Ravello.
- A: No, never heard of it.
- ³
- B: It's just south of Naples.
- A: Oh, right. I know Naples.
- ⁴
- B: Well, lovely. It's a beautiful place, very near the sea.
- A: Sounds wonderful.
- ⁵
- B: Oh, it's just a little village.
- A: It must be great.
- ⁶
- B: I love the countryside and the mountains.
- A: ⁷
- B: Yes, all my life.
- A: ⁸
- B: Yes. There are too many tourists!

VOCABULARY Describing places

2 Choose the word which forms a collocation with the key word.

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 car | area / bank / plant / trees |
| 2 town | village / square / circle / border |
| 3 agricultural | boat / traffic / wall / area |
| 4 transport | system / climate / factories / place |
| 5 Atlantic | plant / country / coast / forest |
| 6 river | coast / bank / church / shop |
| 7 24-hour | culture / system / crime / fields |
| 8 cold | square / climate / museum / port |

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

murders	factories	24-hour culture	beach	rural
parks	desert	industrial	historic	bank

- I live in an area right next to a huge car plant.
- This is a very town. There are lots of old churches and you can even see parts of the old city wall.
- Our village is very It is surrounded by farms and fields.
- This is a very green city because we have a lot of
- I live near the ocean, so I spend all my time on the
- We have a in our town. The bars and shops are open all night.
- Some people live in boats tied to the of the river.
- The pollution is really bad where we live because there are so many
- I live in quite a dangerous area. There were two in my street last year.
- It's always very dry and very hot where I live because it's in the middle of the

PRONUNCIATION /s/ or /z/?

4 Look at the underlined sounds. Write /s/ or /z/ next to each word. Check your answers using a learner's dictionary.

trees	/z/	system	.....
parks	/s/	museum	.....
desert	.....	forest	.....
industrial	.....	bars	.....
historic	.....	boats	.....
factories	.....	place	.....
square	.....	circle	.....
coast	.....	dangerous	.....

Learner tip

You can find a guide to phonemic symbols such as /s/ and /z/ in the inside front cover of the Vocabulary Builder (in the back of the Student's Book) or in any good learner's dictionary.

READING

5 Read this newspaper article quickly.

Which home is best for:

- 1 a young professional couple?
- 2 a family with young children?
- 3 a single person?

6 Read the article again, then answer the questions.

- 1 Which property is the biggest?
- 2 Which is closest to the shops?
- 3 Which has the best access to green space?
- 4 Which has the best security?
- 5 Which is the best for public transport?
- 6 Which is the noisiest?

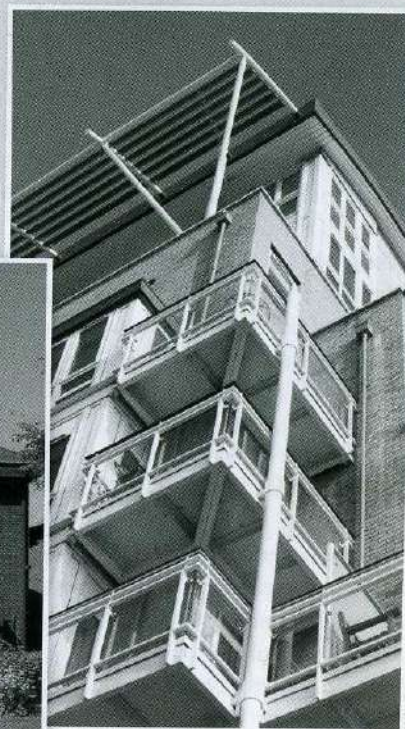
HOMES for You

Buying a new home is one of the most important decisions in everyone's life, so don't miss our weekly guide to the best properties currently on the market in the area.

A This bright spacious studio is in the heart of the historic city centre, just a few minutes from the main square and very close to the main railway and bus stations. The large studio room has spectacular views over one of the city's main shopping streets. There is also a separate kitchen and a modern bathroom.



B This one bedroom luxury flat is situated in the north of the city close to the main business district. It is arranged over two floors: the bedroom and living room are on the upper floor with stairs leading down to the fully fitted kitchen and bathroom. The flat is in a modern block with its own car park, gym, burglar alarm and 24-hour porter.



C This elegant four bedroom house has a living room, dining room and kitchen, as well as a large garden and a garage with space for two cars. It is located in a quiet street in the western suburbs of the city. There is a park at the end of the road and an excellent local school just five minutes' walk away.

Glossary

- studio:** a flat with one main room for sleeping and living
burglar alarm: a system that gives a warning when a thief enters a building
porter: a person who watches the entrance to a building
suburbs: an area of houses and flats outside the centre of a city

VOCABULARY Where I live

1 Complete the descriptions with words and phrases from box A and B.

A

a block of flats	a studio flat	an old people's home
army base	a hall of residence	

B

not much space	take the lift	a shared house
noisy students	at war with	my own sink
split the bills	take turns	a good reputation
military service	people with respect	
have a great view	tiny	

- I can no longer take care of myself and so had to move into Fortunately, the one I found had, and the staff treat So, it's not so bad.
- At present, I'm living in the In my country, all young adult males must do, as we are often another country. I don't like sharing with so many other guys much, but I've made a few really good friends here.
- Rent prices in London are crazy, so the only thing I could afford was this There's, and the bathroom is absolutely, but I'm hoping to move to a bigger place soon, and perhaps share.
- I live on the 14th floor of, and have to all the time. It's awful when it breaks down, but at least I of the park from my living room window.
- I decided to move into on the university campus for my last year, and be close to the library. I have in my room, and the bathroom and kitchen are shared. I'm sometimes bothered by, but on the whole I think I made the right choice.
- A group of us decided to live in, and to save money. We to clean the bathroom and do the cooking, and I think we get on OK.

GRAMMAR *have to, don't have to, can and can't*

2 Choose the correct forms to complete these sentences.

- The bus stop is only five minutes away, so you *can* / *have to* walk there easily.
- He *has to* / *doesn't have to* pay rent because he owns the flat.
- There's a gym in the building, so you *can* / *have to* keep fit.
- The heating has an automatic switch, so you *have to* / *don't have to* turn it off at night.
- This building has a car park, so you *don't have to* / *can* park in the street.
- They *have to* / *don't have to* go home early because there are no buses after ten o'clock.
- We have a gardener who comes every week, so we *can* / *don't have to* worry about the garden.
- They live in the city centre, so they *can't* / *have to* drive to the countryside easily.

3 Complete this email from a foreign student living with a family in Wales to a friend in the USA. Use *have to*, *don't have to*, or *can*.

To: Klara Bunnenberg
From: Pia Cambiaghi
Subject: Life with my new 'family'

Hi Klara

Just a quick email to tell you about the family I'm living with. The Keen family are very friendly and in some ways life is very easy. Back home I ¹ wash my own clothes and do some cooking and cleaning. But it's very easy here – I ² do anything! I ³ use the kitchen to have breakfast, make a drink and stuff. I ⁴ also use the living room to watch TV. But there's one problem.

When I go out to see friends I ⁵ be back at 10 pm! I ⁶ believe it! I'm 18!!! At home I ⁷ come home when I want. OK, I ⁸ phone my parents and tell them where I am but that's normal, right? They need to know where I am. Anyway, I'm not happy here and I have to look for another place to live – the family are really nice but I just can't stay here.

OK, I ⁹ go. I have an exam tomorrow and I need to study.
Mail me back soon!

Lots of love
Pia

LISTENING

4 7.1 Listen to the conversation between a landlady and a tenant. Which of these sentences best describes the situation?

- The tenant is complaining to the landlady about his room.
- The landlady is showing the room to the tenant for the first time.
- The tenant is leaving his room after several years.

5 Tick (✓) the subjects the landlady and tenant talk about.

- | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|------------|
| 1 the room | 3 transport | 5 the rent |
| 2 the house rules | 4 heating in the house | 6 the dog |

6 7.1 Listen again. Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- There's a nice view out of the bedroom window.
- There's a TV in the room.
- The man has his own bathroom.
- The man is a non-smoker.
- The man can use her kitchen before eight o'clock.
- He has to pay extra for heating.
- The heating comes on at six in the morning.
- The man has to pay three months' rent in advance.

DEVELOPING WRITING

A letter – describing where you live

7 Look at the letter quickly. Is it:

- an informal letter to parents?
- an informal formal letter to a company or an institution?
- a letter to a friend?

8 Match the descriptions of the paragraphs (1–4) with the paragraphs (A–D).

- Talks about the family and house rules
- Asks his friend to write back to him.
- Gives information about where his room is.
- Describes his room.

32 Ship Way
Portsmouth
PO16 4TY

15 October

Dear Mahdi,

- I'm writing to give you my new address because I've finally found somewhere to live. It's a small room at the top of a big family house about two kilometres from the centre of Portsmouth. Here's a photo of the place. You can see it's very different from the houses at home. It's a good location for me because it's only five minutes' walk to the university and I can also get to the beach easily.
- There's not much furniture in the room – only a bed, a chair and a desk, as well as a kettle so I can make some tea. There's also no TV in my room but I don't mind because it means I'll have more time to do my course work.
- The family who own the house are friendly but quite strict. They have two young children who go to bed early, so I have to be quiet in the evenings. I also can't invite guests to my room during the week. But the best thing about the room is that the rent is very cheap, so I hope to have a little bit of extra money this term.
- Now that you know my address, please write and tell me all the news from home.

Best wishes,

Ibrahim



9 Read the letter and answer these questions.

- Why is Ibrahim writing to his friend?
- Where is he living?
- What does he like about the location?
- What furniture does he have in his room?
- What is missing from the room?
- Why does Ibrahim have to be quiet in the evenings?
- What other house rules are there?
- What is the best thing about the room?

Language note

You can close informal emails and letters in different ways.

Use *Best wishes* for a person you know but are not close to.

Use *Love* or *Lots of love* for family or close friends.

10 Read the statements. Decide whether they are true (T) or false (F).

- Ibrahim is living in Manchester.
- His room is in a big house.
- The house he is staying in is similar to houses at home.
- He can study more because there's no TV in his room.
- Ibrahim doesn't like the family.
- Because the rent isn't expensive, he has more money.

11 Now write a letter. Describe your new home. Use the four paragraphs in Ibrahim's letter to help you. Include the following:

- Put the address and date at the top.
- Begin 'Dear, ...'
- Give a reason for writing: 'I'm writing to ...' or 'I'm writing because ...'
- Describe the building and the location and say what you like about it.
- Describe the room and its furniture.
- Talk about the people that you live with and any rules that you have to follow.
- Ask the other person to write to you with news.
- Sign off with 'Best wishes'.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Asking for permission

1 Use the prompts to ask permission to do the following.

- It's raining. Ask to borrow an umbrella.
Do you
- You're bored. Ask to switch on the TV.
Is it
- You want to check your emails. Ask to use the computer.
Do you
- You're hungry. Ask to take food from the fridge.
Is it
- You want a friend to stay the night. Ask your flatmate if that's OK.
Do you
- You have no credit on your mobile. Ask to borrow the phone to make a call.
Is it

2 Choose the best answer to the four requests above.

- Give permission:
 - Please do!
 - Yes, I do.
- Refuse permission:
 - Well, actually, I'd rather you didn't.
 - Of course.
- Refuse permission:
 - Yes, I do.
 - No, I'm sorry but that's not possible.
- Give permission:
 - Please help yourself.
 - No, of course not.
- Refuse permission:
 - No, of course not!
 - Well, actually, I'd rather you didn't.
- Give permission:
 - No, I'm sorry but that's not possible.
 - Of course. Please help yourself.

3 Complete this conversation between a guest and a host.

G: Oh, it's 7.30. Do ¹ switch on the TV to watch the football?
 H: Well, ² I'm sorry but I don't like football.
 G: Oh, OK. No problem. Is ³ I borrow your radio and take it up to my bedroom?
 H: Yes, ⁴ Please ⁵
 Are you going to listen to the football then?
 G: Yes. It's a big game for Croatia. We're playing Brazil.
 H: Oh, right. I've got a better idea. I'll take the radio and you watch the TV.
 G: Really? That's very kind. Are you sure?
 H: Yes, of course. ⁶ It's an important game.
 G: Thank you very much! That is very kind of you.
 H: You're welcome!

GRAMMAR will / won't

4 Use the prompts in brackets to write responses, using will or won't.

- A: You're late for class for the third time this week!
B: I'm sorry. I promise (do it again)
- A: You've borrowed £10 from me already this month.
B: I know, but (pay you back)
- A: My train has been cancelled.
B: Oh, no! Poor you. (pick you up in the car)
- A: The phone's ringing again.
B: Don't worry. (get it)
- A: There seems to be a problem with the computer.
B: Really? (look into it)
- A: Can you buy me a ticket for the concert this evening?
B: I haven't got any money, so (be able to)
- A: These bags are really heavy.
B: Give them to me. (carry them for you)
- A: There's someone at the front door.
B: Don't get up. (see who it is)

5 Look at the answers in 1-8 from exercise 4 again. Mark each one immediate response (IR), offer (O), or promise (P). Some sentences can have more than one answer.

6 Fill the gaps in this dialogue with will, 'll or won't.

A: Is that your phone?
 B: Yeah. I ¹ just answer it. Hello? Oh, hi, Mum! You're coming back early? In about two hours! Oh, OK. Yeah, love you too. Bye.
 A: Was that your parents?
 B: Yeah. And this place is in a terrible mess.
 A: Don't panic. I ² help you. I'll do the kitchen.
 B: Great! Thanks. And I ³ clean the living room.
 I ⁴ do my room - there's not enough time.
 A: Hey, I've got an idea. I ⁵ call my brother. He can come over and help us.
 B: Good thinking. One thing is for sure.
 A: What's that?
 B: I ⁶ have a party again when my parents aren't here.
 And that's a promise!
 A: Yeah, yeah, yeah.



VOCABULARY Staying with people

7 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 Would you like to hang
2 There's a lot of crime in this area, so always lock
3 If you're feeling hungry please help
4 The carpets are very valuable, so please take
5 My hair is wet, so can I
6 I couldn't find a bank, so can you
7 Follow me and I'll show
8 Why don't you sit

- a yourself to the food in the fridge.
- b the door when you go out.
- c lend me some money until this evening?
- d your coat in this wardrobe?
- e down in this armchair and relax?
- f you the guest bedroom.
- g off your shoes in the porch.
- h borrow a hairdryer?

8 Mark each sentence G for guest or H for host.

- 1 Would you like to sit down and I'll make you some tea?
- 2 Can I borrow your hairdryer, please? I left mine at home.
- 3 Of course. In Japan we always take off our shoes too.
- 4 When are your other guests leaving?
- 5 Please help yourself to a drink if you're thirsty.
- 6 Why don't you have dinner with us tonight?
- 7 Could I use the phone for a minute? I need to phone a friend.
- 8 Please make sure you turn down your music after eight because the children go to bed then.



Vocabulary Builder Quiz 7

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 7 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 The house is surrounded a a rural area of France.
- 2 We agreed to split b off the coast of Italy.
- 3 I won't take the c the housework between us.
- 4 They live on a farm in d overseas last year.
- 5 Irene went to work e lift, I'll walk down.
- 6 They moved to an island f by fields.

2 Choose the correct word.

- 1 We had to place my grandmother in an old people's house / home.
- 2 She lives in an industrial / agricultural town north of Birmingham.
- 3 Your decision to go will develop / affect our relationship.
- 4 They live on the banks / borders of the River Thames.
- 5 Can you lend / borrow me your charger?
- 6 The liberal / historic city of Chester is a popular place to visit.

3 Choose the word that does not form a collocation with the key word.

- 1 hang a coat / a picture / money
- 2 financial support / problems / job
- 3 steel plant / takeaway / tool
- 4 border base / control / town
- 5 treat terribly / with respect / with freedom
- 6 steal a car / a bank / money

4 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 A repeat of a TV programme is when it is shown again.
- 2 A port is a factory where things are made.
- 3 Your reputation is what other people think of you.
- 4 Your host is the person who has invited you to his home.
- 5 A wall is something that covers the top of a house.
- 6 A desert is an area where people grow vegetables.
- 7 A residence is a large house.

Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again. Compare your scores.

VOCABULARY Stages of education**1** Complete the conversations with the words in the boxes.

1 PE primary secondary subject

A: Is your daughter still at school?

B: No she's 15 now, so she goes to school.

A: And what's her favourite ?

B: Well, she's very good at sports so she loves

2 left school nursery second year university

A: So, Maxine, what do you do?

M: I'm studying graphic design at Middlesex

..... I'm in my

A: I thought you had a daughter.

M: Yes, I do. I got married as soon as I and Jodie was born the following year. I waited until she started school, and then went back to my studies.

3 year off part time leave place

A: Are you going to university when you school?

B: Yes, if I get a But I don't want to go immediately, so I'll take a first.

A: Are you going to get a job?

B: Yes, but I want to do other things as well, so I'll work

4 finals degree Master's graduate

A: When are you going to from university?

B: Well, I'm taking my in the summer, so it won't be long.

A: And what are you going to do after that?

B: If I get a good I'll stay at university and do a

Language note

In most British, North American and Australian universities, a Bachelor's degree comes first. The course is called an undergraduate course. This can be followed by postgraduate degrees – a Master's degree and then a PhD. A PhD can be in any subject, not just philosophy.

2 Write these abbreviations next to the right degree.

MA	BA	MSc	PhD	BSc
Degree		Abbreviation		
1	Bachelor of Arts	.....		
2	Bachelor of Science	.....		
3	Master of Arts	.....		
4	Master of Science	.....		
5	Doctor of Philosophy	.....		

3 Complete this table.

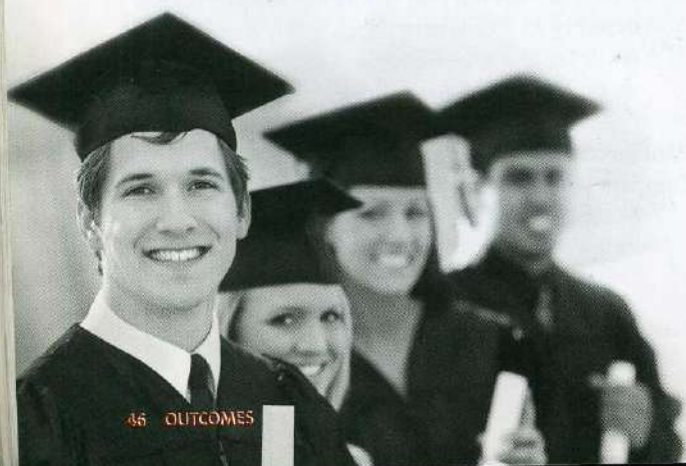
subject	person
biology	biologist
chemistry	
	economist
	geographer
	historian
	mathematician
philosophy	
	physicist
science	
sociology	

Learner tip

You can record new vocabulary in different ways. You can use tables like the one in exercise C above. You can also use diagrams to help you remember a group of words.

go to → kindergarten → primary school → secondary school → university

take a degree / an MSc in → Biology → get / have a degree / an MSc in Biology



DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS *No?*

4 Match the speaker's first sentence (1–6) with the next sentence (a–f).

- 1 I can't see the point of IT classes.
- 2 I'm not going to my PE class today.
- 3 I don't want to take a year out before university.
- 4 I don't really like history.
- 5 I don't know why people study Latin.
- 6 I'm not going to continue with chemistry next year.

No?

- a No. I've never understood it and my teacher says I can drop it.
- b No. I've hurt my leg and I can't run.
- c No. Everyone knows how to use computers these days.
- d No. It's a dead language. Nobody speaks it.
- e No. I'm interested in the future, not the past.
- f No. I want to go there as soon as possible.

LISTENING

5 8.1 Listen to the conversation between two students. What are they discussing? Tick the correct answer.

- a The subjects they've enjoyed over the past year.
- b The subjects they are going to choose to study next year.
- c Their favourite subjects.



6 8.1 In the conversation you heard six sentences from the Developing conversations activity. Listen again and tick (✓) the six sentences you heard.

7 What subjects do the two students choose?

- 1 The boy decides not to study
- 2 The girl decides to study
- 3 She decides not to study

GRAMMAR First conditionals

8 Complete these sentences with the phrases in the box below.

you'll find it easy to get a job.
we'll go home early.
if they're not quick.
you won't pass your exams.
if you promise to give it back.
if you send him an email.

- 1 If you don't work harder,
- 2 They'll miss the train home
- 3 If you study law,
- 4 He'll reply to you
- 5 If the teacher doesn't arrive,
- 6 I'll lend you the book

9 Choose the correct words in these sentences.

- 1 If you *are* / *will be* late tomorrow, you *are* / *will be* in trouble.
- 2 He *goes* / *will go* to the party if he *finishes* / *will finish* his homework.
- 3 If I *don't see* / *won't see* you tomorrow, I *call* / *will call* you.
- 4 They *don't* / *won't* help us if we *don't* / *won't* ask them.
- 5 If she *doesn't* / *won't* come to school tomorrow, we *email* / *will email* her.
- 6 You *don't* / *won't* pass your exams if you *don't* / *won't* revise.
- 7 If you *miss* / *will miss* tomorrow's lecture you *can't* / *won't be able to* do the assignment.
- 8 I *can't* / *won't be able to* get up in the morning if I *don't* / *won't* go to bed now.
- 9 If he *will play* / *plays* football tomorrow, he'll *come* / *comes* home late.
- 10 The coach *leaves* / *will leave* at nine tomorrow if everyone *arrives* / *will arrive* on time.

Language note

In conditional sentences, use a comma when the sentence begins with *if*.

If I see you tomorrow, I'll give you the book.

Do not use a comma when *if* starts the second half of the sentence.

I'll give you the book if I see you tomorrow.

VOCABULARY Education systems

1 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1 People who send their children to private school | a set a test. |
| 2 Students have to | b bad behaviour. |
| 3 An example of a traditional approach to teaching is | c state school. |
| 4 Textbooks and computers are examples of teaching | d get into a top university. |
| 5 You need to get good grades at secondary school to | e fail your final exam. |
| 6 In British schools, English and maths are | f resources. |
| 7 You may be asked to leave a school because of | g pay fees. |
| 8 To check what students know, teachers often | h compulsory subjects. |
| 9 A school run by the government is called a | i copying from a textbook. |
| 10 You won't get a qualification if you | j study for a test. |

2 Complete the conversation with words and phrases from the box.

grades	resources	textbooks	state school	tests
fees	behaviour	universities	traditional	
compulsory	private school	fail		

- B: Hi, Jan. What are you doing here?
- J: I've got an appointment to see the principal. We're thinking of sending Mattie to ¹....., and I'm visiting a couple of places in the area. I'm worried the ²..... here are a bit high, but it's got a really good name. Do you work here?
- B: Yes. I teach geography. It's a good school, Jan, and the students generally get good ³..... A high percentage get into top ⁴....., and not many ⁵..... their exams. The pass rate's really good.
- J: Mm, that's what I heard. What about teaching methods? It's an old school. Does it have a ⁶..... approach?
- B: Not at all. We've a number of modern ⁷....., like interactive boards, computers in every classroom. We don't just use ⁸..... Computing is one of the ⁹..... subjects, and everyone has to learn to code. We also take students on a lot of field trips, and they do projects rather than taking lots of ¹⁰.....
- J: Sounds amazing! What about the students? Are they nice?
- B: Well, you always get some that are difficult, but we encourage teamwork, and give awards for good ¹¹.....
- J: That's very different from the ¹²..... he's at now! Thanks, Bill! I'll probably see you again soon.

3 Match the words to form collocations.

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1 have | a university |
| 2 pay | b subject |
| 3 fail | c school |
| 4 get into | d fees |
| 5 compulsory | e qualification |
| 6 bad | f an exam |
| 7 state | g behaviour |
| 8 get a | h resources |

GRAMMAR *had to / could*

4 Rewrite these sentences using *had to*, *didn't have to*, *could* or *couldn't*.

- She wasn't able to finish her assignment.
.....
- It was necessary for him to stay up all night to revise.
.....
- She was able to do any sport she liked at school.
.....
- It wasn't necessary for them to do their homework.
.....
- It was impossible for me to find the book in the library.
.....
- It was necessary for us to complain about the teacher.
.....
- Was it necessary for you to stay late after class?
.....
- Were you able to understand the last question in the exam?
.....
- It was possible for him to go home early because he had finished his work.
.....
- Was it necessary for them to buy their textbooks?
.....

5 Find and correct five mistakes in this text.

The parents' evening at the school was a complete disaster. We have to start late because lots of the parents were stuck in a traffic jam and didn't can get to the school on time. Then there weren't enough chairs in the school hall, so lots of people must stand. Finally, the microphone didn't work, so the audience can't hear anything. Still, at least we hadn't to listen to the headmaster's speech. He's always so boring!



READING

6 Read the webpage of Banville School. Which kind of student do you think it is best for?

- a A student who is excellent at sport but not very good at other school subjects.
- b A student who wants to have a nice time at school but not work very hard.
- c An intelligent student who wants to go to university and is good at music and sport.

Welcome to Banville School



Banville School in Tapstow, North London, is a day school for boys and girls aged 11 to 18. Banville aims to provide a **stimulating and challenging environment** with **high academic standards**.

The school opened in 1786 and has been on the same site for over 200 years. But despite its long history, the school has **excellent modern facilities**. These include a new gym, a fully-equipped computer room and Internet access in every classroom. Banville is also proud to be a part of a **thriving, multicultural community** in this part of North London and students regularly take part in community projects.

Our teachers work hard to ensure that all pupils achieve their best and our exam results are **consistently above average**. Last year 87% of our students went on to continue their studies at university.

There is an **outstanding musical tradition** at the school and our students perform in more than ten school concerts every year. Banville students also excel at sport, particularly football, tennis and netball. The school has its own sports ground next to the main school buildings.

Banville is 12 miles from central London, close to the M25. The school has excellent public transport connections: Tapstow railway station is a five-minute walk away and several buses stop outside the school.

7 Look at the phrases in bold. Match them to these explanations.

- 1 Always better than normal.
.....
- 2 An atmosphere that makes students think and try to do their best.
.....
- 3 A very impressive record of playing instruments and giving concerts.
.....
- 4 A successful area containing people from many different countries.
.....
- 5 Very good new buildings and equipment.
.....
- 6 An expectation that students will do well in subjects such as science, languages and literature.
.....

8 Read the webpage again. Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 Banville School educates children of all ages.
- 2 The school aims to be relaxed and friendly.
- 3 The school has been in the same place for over 200 years.
- 4 Banville is building a new computer room.
- 5 It is a part of the local community.
- 6 Exam results are not particularly good.
- 7 Most students go to university after leaving Banville.
- 8 There are lots of opportunities for musicians.
- 9 The school does not have its own sports facilities.
- 10 The school is close to central London.

VOCABULARY Cheating

1 Words with similar meanings. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.

lie claim pretend cheat

- He to be studying, but his book was upside-down.
- She in the physics exam by copying answers from the boy in front of her.
- They the watch was a gold Rolex, but it didn't look real to me.
- He about his work experience, and then couldn't do the job.

2 Replace the words in *italics* with one of the verbs in the box.

claimed improve checked earned
ordered pretended complete lied
resign declare take got stuck

- She *didn't tell the truth* about her qualifications in order to get the job.
- He had to *leave his position* after they discovered what he was doing.
- He didn't *state* all the money he *made from working* that year so as to avoid paying a lot of tax.
- She *made them believe* that she was sleeping, so she could listen to their conversation.
- He *couldn't go on further* with his maths homework, so he asked a friend to *finish* it for him.
- She *said* the painting was her own work, but when I *had another look* I saw Tara helping her.
- When I take exams, I sometimes *use* drugs to *make* my performance *better*.
- He went online and *asked a company to send* a copy of 'How to Cheat in Exams Successfully'.

3 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1 She had to resign | a her grades, and so cheated in the exam. |
| 2 You should declare | b the textbooks for the course. |
| 3 He decided to take | c the course to get a qualification. |
| 4 You need to complete | d two students had exactly the same answers. |
| 5 She wanted to improve | e as school principal because of the scandal. |
| 6 Last year, he earned | f on several questions, and failed the exam. |
| 7 He went online to order | g all the money you earn on the tax form. |
| 8 She got stuck | h less money because he lost his job. |
| 9 When he checked the tests | i vitamins to improve his performance at work. |

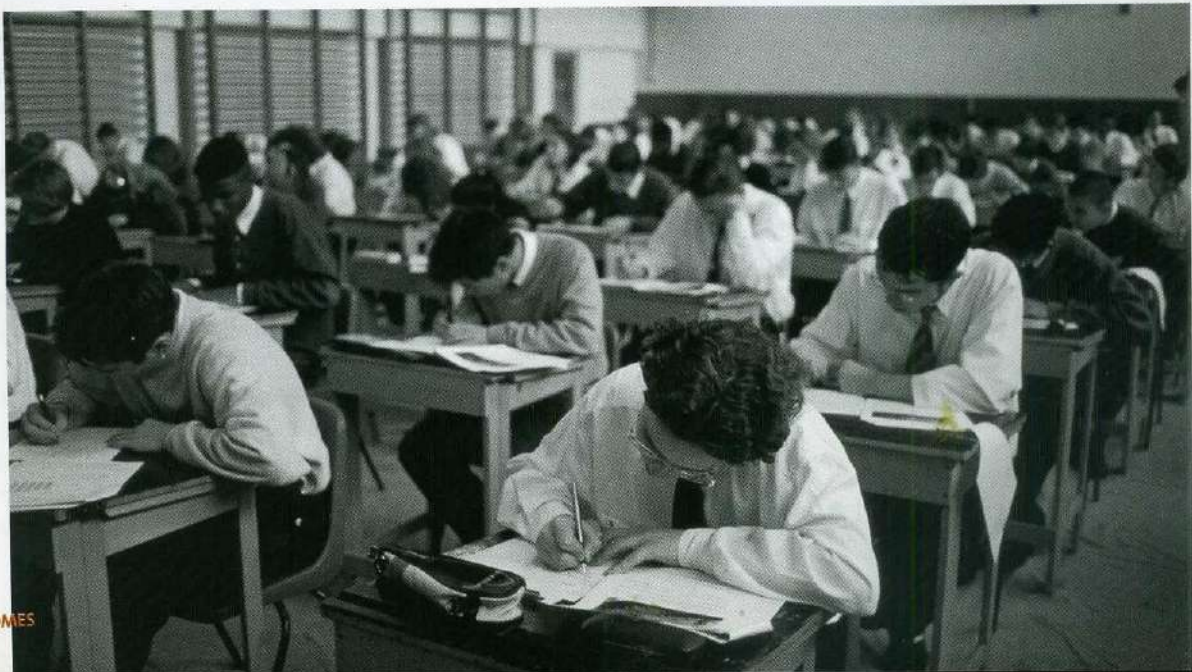
PRONUNCIATION Sound and spelling

4 8.2 Listen to the underlined sounds. Which is the odd one out in each group?

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 <u>change</u> | <u>cheap</u> | <u>approach</u> | <u>chemistry</u> |
| 2 <u>check</u> | <u>attention</u> | <u>optional</u> | <u>share</u> |
| 3 <u>relationship</u> | <u>traditional</u> | <u>machine</u> | <u>teacher</u> |

Learner's tip

When you record vocabulary, underline sounds which are spelled in unusual ways. Next to them, make a note to remind yourself how to pronounce them.



DEVELOPING WRITING

A report – giving advice

- 5 Use the information to fill the gaps in the report below.

Report Card

Name	Ahmed Al-Rashid
Course	Economics Year 2
Effort	Good
Exam mark	62%
Course work	Excellent
Contributions in class	Poor
Suggestions	Speak more in class

You have made good progress in ¹ ² of your Economics course. Although your exam mark of ³ was a little disappointing, you have worked hard and your ⁴ has been excellent. However, your ⁵ in class have been poor. If you speak ⁶ you will do much better next year.

- 6 Use the information to complete the report for Anna Gadja. Use the model above and change the information as appropriate.

Report Card

Name	Anna Gadja
Course	History Year 2
Effort	Average
Exam mark	59%
Course work	Poor
Contributions in class	Good
Suggestions	Work harder

You have made some progress

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 8

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 8 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- Jules is fluent Spanish and German.
- She had a day from work so that she could study for the exam.
- Clare was delighted when she got Durham university.
- She wasn't sure how to deal the problem.
- Our English teacher places emphasis speaking.
- She was pressure to do well in her exams.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- developments have changed education dramatically.
TECHNOLOGY
- Our Maths teacher is very and shouts all the time.
PATIENT
- We use tablets instead of in class now.
BOOK
- If I don't pass the exam now, I can it in December.
TAKE
- What's the of an education when you can't find work?
VALUABLE
- She gained a to teach chemistry.
QUALIFY

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

tempt set offer claim challenge resign declare

- Many universities students a chance to make some money.
- The head teacher became very ill and had to
- He that he was a qualified doctor, but he was really still a student.
- She was to copy from the textbook, but stopped herself.
- Rolf all the money he earns every year.
- She her students a test on Byzantine music yesterday.
- Chen was tired of being laughed at, and his classmate to a fight.

4 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 The teacher asked us to write | a an effort to study. |
| 2 Madame Rouge has a modern | b whereas art is optional. |
| 3 Colin, you really should make | c me time and money. |
| 4 Scientists have found the gene | d an essay for homework. |
| 5 Online teaching saves | e approach to language teaching. |
| 6 Maths is a compulsory subject | f that affects our mood. |

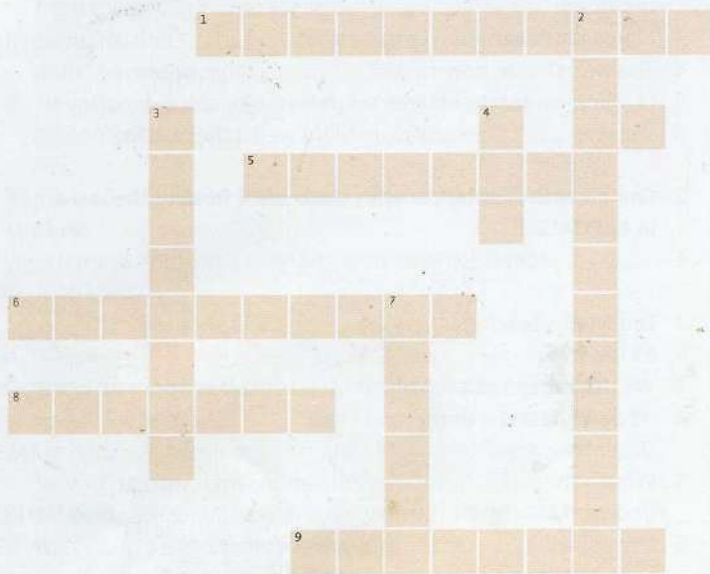
Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again. Compare your scores.

VOCABULARY

Illnesses and health problems

1 Read the clues. Then write the health problems in the grid.



ACROSS →

- 1 When body heat is higher than normal (11)
- 5 When blood runs from your nose (9)
- 6 A pain, when you can't swallow or speak easily (4, 6)
- 8 A negative reaction of the body to something that is normally harmless (7)
- 9 A sore head (8)

DOWN ↓

- 2 When your stomach hurts and you feel sick (12)
- 3 An allergy which appears in springtime, rather like a bad cold (3, 5)
- 4 An illness with a high fever, aching body, cold, etc. (3)
- 7 A medical condition that makes it difficult to breathe (6)

2 Choose the correct verb in each sentence.

- 1 When I get hay fever, my eyes *wash* / *water* all the time.
- 2 I've got a sore throat and I can't *sneeze* / *swallow*.
- 3 I feel hot and cold and I'm *sweating* / *swallowing* a lot.
- 4 If I go near a cat, I start *sneezing* / *hurting* and I can't breathe.
- 5 I've lost my appetite and my whole body *coughs* / *aches*.
- 6 I get these awful headaches that sometimes *last* / *make* up to an hour!
- 7 The pain's so bad that I can't *concentrate* / *swallow* on my work.
- 8 Have you got any throat sweets? My throat hurts when I *sweat* / *cough*.

GRAMMAR Giving advice
(*should, ought to, why don't you*)

3 Choose the correct phrase – *why don't you, ought to* or *should* – to complete the sentences.

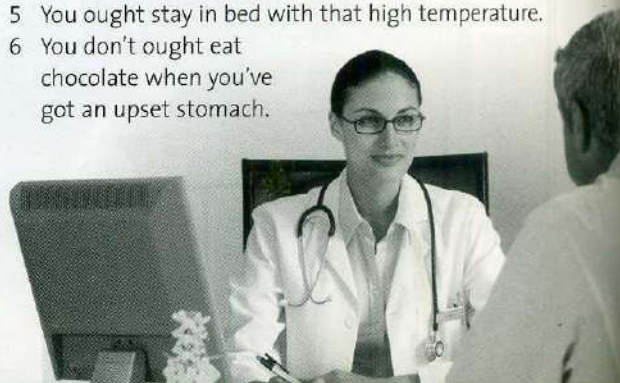
- 1 A: I've got a bad back.
B: I don't think you lift that heavy box, then.
- 2 Look, you've been working all day.
..... take a break?
- 3 I know you don't want to upset him, but you tell him how you feel.
- 4 A: Ow! I've cut myself!
B: You put a plaster on that.
- 5 What I do about my nosebleed? It won't stop!
- 6 put some lavender oil on that burn? It's good for the pain, and helps it get better.
- 7 You go to the doctor's about that rash. You've had it for a week now.
- 8 You complain! You've waited an hour for your soup.

Language note

- 1 *Should, ought to* and *why don't you* are all fairly polite ways of giving advice, but *should* and *ought to* are slightly more forceful. The speaker is certain that this is what the other person should do, e.g. *You ought to finish your work before you leave.*
- 2 *Why don't you* introduces a more gentle suggestion, as a possibility, e.g. *If you're worried, why don't you talk to the teacher about it?*

4 Correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

- 1 I think you shouldn't come to work if you're not well.
- 2 Maybe you should to put something on that cut.
- 3 He's got an awful cough. He oughts to stop smoking!
- 4 Katie looks awful! Why not you take her to see the doctor?
- 5 You ought stay in bed with that high temperature.
- 6 You don't ought eat chocolate when you've got an upset stomach.



DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Common questions about illness

5 Complete the conversations with the questions in the box.

Are you OK?
Are you taking anything for it?
Have you been to the doctor's about it?

- 1 A:?
B: No, not really. I've got an upset stomach.
- 2 A:?
B: No, not yet. I've got an appointment tomorrow, and I'll see what she says.
- 3 A:?
B: Well, I'm taking these tablets, but they make me sleepy.
- 4 A:?
B: Yes, I went this morning, and she told me to get some rest.
- 5 A:?
B: No, I'm not. I've had this terrible headache all morning.
- 6 A:?
B: Well, I've got this cough mixture and some throat sweets.

6 Match the conversations (1–6) with the correct advice (a–f).

- 1 A: So what did the doctor say about your hay fever?
B:
 - 2 A: Good news. My leg isn't broken! But it really hurts.
B: Fantastic! So what did the doctor say?
A:
 - 3 A: What did the doctor say about the rash on your arm?
B:
 - 4 A: So, did the doctor say you weigh too much?
B: Yes, she did! No surprise to me.
A: And what advice did she give you?
B:
 - 5 A: What did the doctor tell you to do about your upset stomach?
B:
 - 6 A: The doctor told me my cough's got worse.
B: Really? And what did she tell you to do about it?
A:
- a 'You should go to bed, drink lots of water and eat nothing but rice with some lemon in it.'
 - b 'Why don't you start jogging?'
 - c 'Why don't you take some throat sweets and gargle with salt water three times a day?'
 - d 'You ought to take it easy, put your leg up and rest for a few days.'
 - e 'You should take these tablets, and put some drops in your eyes three times a day.'
 - f 'You should wear cotton clothes and use this cream three times a day.'

Learner tip

Use the dialogues in this section of each unit as a base, and practise forming your own dialogues. For example, in this unit, you can practise the dialogues above with different health problems. It is more effective if you can practise with a partner.

LISTENING



7 9.1 You are going to hear two conversations.

In each case, one speaker has a problem. Listen, and decide what problem they have.

- 1
- 2

8 What advice does the other speaker give them?

- 1
- 2

9 In conversation 2, what does the man tell the woman to do at the end?

.....

10 Match each conversation with one of the pictures.

LISTENING



- 1 The child in the photo has Down's Syndrome (DS). How much do you know about DS? Tick (✓) the best answer to complete the sentences.

- 1 DS is:
 - a mental illness
 - b a condition babies are born with
 - c a disease.
- 2 People with DS:
 - a are usually physically disabled
 - b cannot speak
 - c can learn to read and write.
- 3 People with DS:
 - a never have learning difficulties
 - b have learning difficulties
 - c sometimes have learning difficulties.
- 4 Many people with the condition lead:
 - a active, semi-independent lives
 - b inactive, dependent lives
 - c inactive, semi-dependent lives.

- 2 9.2 Listen to the first part of an interview with a doctor talking about people with DS and check your answers.

- 3 Read the statements and tick (✓) the sentences that are true. Listen and check your answers.

- 1 In the UK one in every 1,000 babies is born with DS.
- 2 The general public now understands a lot about this condition.
- 3 DS occurs after a child is born.
- 4 A person with DS does not suffer from the condition.
- 5 People with DS are unable to play team games.
- 6 There are three football teams for children with DS.

- 4 9.3 In part two of the interview Dr Aziz talks about a woman with DS who has done a lot in her life. Complete these notes as you listen.

Ruth Cromer is an example of someone with DS who attended

1.....

She succeeded in learning to 2....., and taught herself to

3.....

She became 4....., and has appeared on TV several times.

She also writes articles and gives 5..... about DS.

VOCABULARY Phrases with *mind* and *matter*

- 5 Complete the conversations with the phrases in the box.

it's a question of mind over matter	
what's the matter?	I don't mind
it doesn't matter	never mind
to make matters worse	you don't mind
would you mind	I've got a lot on my mind
that's a matter of opinion	

- 1 A: You look upset!?
B: Oh, what with problems at work, and Kate not doing well at school, I guess
- 2 A: I know you're busy, but
helping me with these bags? It'll only take a minute.
B: Sure, no problem.
- 3 S: Do you want me to take you to the station, Val?
V: Oh, that's kind of you, Sven. Are you sure?
S: You know me, Val. helping a lady!
- 4 H: So, I have to go through my presentation again, and improve it....., I've lost some of my notes, and will have to start again.
K: At least you won't look an idiot in front of the client.
H: I'm not sure I'll be able to make a better job of it. I thought my ideas were OK.
- 5 C: Georges! So sorry we're late! The traffic was awful!
G: because Ken and Gitty have only just arrived.
- 6 I: I can't do it, doctor! I hate needles!
D: There's nothing to worry about, Ivan.
.....

- 6 Match the sentences (1–6) with the responses (a–i). There are more responses than you need.

- 1 How can you take that medicine? It tastes awful!
- 2 Would you like some help there?
- 3 That's a terrible cough you've got.
- 4 It's easy to become a vegetarian.
- 5 You look stressed. What's the matter?
- 6 I completely forgot your birthday!
- a That's a matter of opinion. I'm not sure I could stop eating meat.
- b Never mind. It's not difficult.
- c It doesn't matter. I didn't do much, anyway.
- d To make matters worse, I've got a temperature, too.
- e I don't mind doing it.
- f It's a question of mind over matter.
- g I've got a lot on my mind, and I'm exhausted.
- h Would you mind eating a salad?
- i If you're sure you don't mind.

PRONUNCIATION

7 Underline the stress on these words.

central musical industrial physical
unbelievable enjoyable reliable curable

8 9.4 Listen and check your answers. Notice that the last syllable in each word is unstressed.

9 9.5 Practise saying these sentences. Then listen and repeat.

- The flat is really central.
- Most kids are pretty musical.
- That part of town is really industrial.
- Rugby's a very physical game.
- That's unbelievable!
- The course was enjoyable.
- The cars they make are very reliable.
- A lot of diseases are curable.

DEVELOPING WRITING A webpage – fundraising

Language note

A *charity* is an organisation which collects money to help people or projects that need support, e.g. UNICEF, WWF, etc.

To *raise money for charity* is to do something in order to collect money for a particular organisation, e.g. *Andre is going to cycle from London to Paris to raise money for Greenpeace*. This is also known as *fundraising*.

10 Read the fundraising webpage and answer the questions.

- Who is Marianna going to raise money for?
- Why is she raising money for this charity?
- What is she going to do?
- How much money is she hoping to raise?

11 Match the headings (1–6) to the parts of the webpage (a–f).

- What I am going to do
- How much money I'm hoping to raise
- Why I'm interested in helping this charity
- Thanks
- Information about the health problem
- How much money I've raised until now

www.differentstrokes.co.uk

Target: €2,000

Raised so far: €750

My story

Thanks for visiting my fundraising page.

a

b

c My son had a stroke at the age of ten months. Fortunately, he has made a full recovery, but for a while he could not use his left arm or leg.

d Stroke is the single largest cause of disability in the United Kingdom. Survivors may lose the use of an arm or leg, and also experience problems with speaking and fatigue. 10,000 people under the age of 55 suffer a stroke every year: 1,000 of these are under 30.

e I will be taking part in the London to Paris Cycle Ride next May to raise money towards research at the new clinic in London. Please donate as much as you can

f Thank you for your support.
Marianna

Glossary

donate: give money or help to a charity or organisation

fundraising: way of collecting money to help a charity or organisation

stroke: medical problem where a blood vessel in the brain breaks open or becomes blocked; it can kill you, or leave you unable to use your arm or leg

fatigue: when a person feels very tired

12 Raoul has decided to do something to raise money for the charity Speakability. He is going to write a fundraising webpage, and has written some notes. Read Raoul's notes and write a webpage like Marianna's above.

- Target: to raise €5,000
- My reason for helping: accident in 2005, head injury, aphasia for two years. Speakability helped me speak again
- Charity: Speakability UK.
- Descriptions: they help people who cannot speak, read or write after suffering a stroke, head injury, etc. Medical name for this problem – aphasia
- What I'm going to do: walk from Edinburgh to Brighton

8 Read the text again. Which remedy / remedies ...

- 1 fights the virus?
- 2 fight the symptoms?
- 3 do you swallow?
- 4 advise you to rub part of your body?
- 5 helps stop the virus affecting other people?

Holistic Health Answers Your Questions

Q Can you give me some advice about alternative remedies for the flu?

A There are several ways to treat the flu. The best method is to take echinacea as soon as you feel slightly unwell. This will stop the **virus** from developing. If the **symptoms** have already appeared, then you should try one or more of the following remedies.

a) Aromatherapy for colds and flu

Several essential oils help fight the virus. Mix basil, eucalyptus and pine in some almond oil and **rub** it on your chest to clear your blocked nose. If you have a chesty cough, put some basil, pine and tea tree in a bowl of hot water and breathe in the **steam**. Don't do this if you suffer from asthma. If you have a sore throat, try putting one drop of tea tree and one drop of lemon in a small glass of water and **gargle**. Don't swallow it, though! For children, you should add some honey. Finally, **burn** a mixture of the oils to keep the home atmosphere healthy, and stop other family members catching the virus. At night, place a slightly wet towel on the **radiator** in each bedroom, and put two drops of eucalyptus and tea tree on it. This helps sleepers' noses stay clear.

b) Nutrition for flu and colds

For a couple of days, you should swallow only liquids – water, juices, teas and soups. Freshly made juices and homemade soups are the most effective **remedy** for flu symptoms. Make chicken and rice soup, and add some garlic and ginger. Freshly-made fruit juice also helps lower a high temperature. Drink at least six to eight glasses of liquid a day, to make it easier for the body to fight the virus. Don't drink milk because it blocks the nose.

c) Hydrotherapy for flu

As well as following the advice above, why don't you take hot baths, or hot foot-baths followed by a cold mitten rub? Keep your feet warm at all times. To warm your feet, sit them in a hot mustard bath for five to ten minutes. Put one large spoonful of mustard powder in four cups of hot water. After a hot bath, try the cold mitten rub. Wet a small towel or washcloth with cold water. Wrap this round your hand and rub your other arm hard, beginning with the fingers and finishing at the shoulder. Do this again, and then dry your arm with the towel. Repeat the action on your other arm, and then do your legs, feet and body.

Glossary

holistic health: health advice that includes diet and exercise as well as helping the particular health problem

alternative (medicine, therapy, treatment, remedy, etc.): different forms of treating health problems, which use plants, diet, massage, etc.

mitten: a kind of glove that covers the whole hand

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 9

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 9 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- 1 I get easily. ANXIETY
- 2 His behaviour was not! ACCEPT
- 3 She is physically DISABILITY
- 4 They're a very family. RELIGION
- 5 I want to learn more about Ivan's background. CULTURE
- 6 She felt after he left her. DEPRESSION
- 7 Thank you for your gift. GENEROSITY

2 Correct the errors in the collocations.

- 1 I ate some shellfish and now I've got a sad stomach.
- 2 Take a deep muscle through your nose.
- 3 She's made a speedy diarrhoea from the flu.
- 4 He broke out in a burn after touching the cat.
- 5 I lost my breath after shouting so much at the match.

3 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 A *dose* of medicine is the amount you take.
- 2 If an injury *heals*, it gets worse.
- 3 If you *exceed* the correct amount of medicine, you take too much.
- 4 An *operation* is a kind of medicine.
- 5 A *prescription* is when your body is very hot.
- 6 A *scar* is a mark on your skin from an old wound or injury.
- 7 You have a *physical* disability when part of your mind does not work properly.

4 Cross out the word that does not form a collocation with the key word.

- 1 healthy / put on an / lose your / work up an appetite
- 2 head / back / throat / stomach ache
- 3 wise / severe / bouts of / mild depression
- 4 have a bad / bite my / a pain in my lower / flat on my back
- 5 emotional / allergic / first / back reaction
- 6 take a deep / hold your / suffer from / get out of breath

Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again. Compare your scores.

10

PLACES TO STAY

VOCABULARY Places to stay

1 Make collocations with words from box A and box B.

A		B	
babysitting	provide	fire	breakfast
basic	put up	a room	service
free	real	meals	rate
heated	reduced	season	the tent
including	share	block	furniture
low	shower	wi-fi	pool

2 Complete the collocations in the sentences.

- The room only had basic, but it was only €30 a night including
- We put up fairly quickly, and then I went to get cleaned up, but the water in the shower was cold!
- It was great! There was a heated, which the kids spent all day in, and also a babysitting, so we were able to get out on our own a couple of nights.
- They gave us the room at a reduced, as it was low, but I thought it was still quite expensive.
- It had a huge double bed and a real, and with room service providing, we never left the room all weekend!
- Well, six of us had to share in the hostel, but it was clean, and there was free, which was a nice surprise!

3 Circle the word in *italics* which does not normally collocate with the key word. Use a dictionary to help you.

- service *room / babysitting / low / self*
- provide *meals / price / help / information*
- room *double / tent / single / service*
- tent *put up / leave / take down / pitch*
- season *high / free / holiday / low*
- block *shower / apartment / campsite / office*

LISTENING

4 10.1 You are going to listen to four people talking about the type of holiday accommodation they prefer. Listen and match two of the speakers with the photographs A and B. Write the type of accommodation the other two speakers mention.

- Speaker 1: Speaker 3:
Speaker 2: Speaker 4:



A – a hostel



B – an apartment block.

5 10.1 Listen again and complete the sentences with phrases that you hear.

- Speaker 1 says the in his type of accommodation helps him to really relax.
- He also likes having so that he can keep in touch with the office if necessary.
- Speaker 2 likes the freedom from a so that she can get up when she wants.
- She also likes going on holiday in the, as it's quieter.
- Speaker 3 likes to know how many people she will with before she goes to her type of accommodation.
- She also checks before deciding where to go.
- Speaker 4 likes having facilities such as a where he goes, because he has children.
- He also likes the fact that the place and so he doesn't always have to cook.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Apologising

6 Answer the following questions with *I'm afraid so* or *I'm afraid not*.

- Do you have a babysitting service?
.....
- Is it necessary to book in advance?
.....
- Can we order meals in our room?
.....
- Is there a cancellation fee?
.....
- Do you allow dogs?
.....
- Do we have to pay for the mirror we broke?
.....

7 Answer the following questions. Begin with I'm afraid, and use the words in brackets to help you.

- Do you take Visa?
I'm afraid
(not accept credit cards / but / can pay by cheque).
- Do you have any rooms available from the 12th to the 15th of this month?
I'm afraid
(fully booked / until / end of month)
- Where can I park my car?
I'm afraid
have to park / car park / down the road)
- Is this the only room you have available?
I'm afraid
(wedding party / tomorrow evening / all guests / stay in hotel)
- Do you have a pool?
I'm afraid
(yes / closed for repairs)
- Can I book theatre tickets through the hotel?
I'm afraid
(not have / enough staff)

8 Read the hotel online booking form and answer the questions.

- Who is making the booking enquiry?
- Where do they want to go?
- How many people are going?
- When do they want to go?
- How long do they want to stay?
- Are they having a celebration? If so, for which occasion?
- Will they get any discount? If so, what for?
- Can they take their dog?

9 Match the words (1-8) with their definitions (a-h).

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1 guest house | a how many nights you want to stay |
| 2 nights | b kind of accommodation: bed and breakfast, or bed and two meals, etc. |
| 3 rooms | c we do not accept animals in the hotel |
| 4 type | d how many rooms you want to book |
| 5 board | e special services offered when you book |
| 6 your details | f kind of room you want: single, double or family room |
| 7 booking information | g small hotel with usually no more than 10 rooms |
| 8 pets not allowed | h the customer's personal information |

10 You want to stay at the Willowmere Guest House with your family for the first two weeks of July. Complete the form below.

DEVELOPING WRITING

An online booking form

Booking Enquiry to: Applecote Guest House

arrival	2 Sept 2015	rooms	1
nights	8	type	family
adults	2	board	B&B
children	2		
age of children	16, 9		

Your details

name Jorg Oskarsson
email josk@kambia.com
phone 0046 784 331225

Booking information

Special celebrations:
Son's 16th birthday

Children under 12
pay £10 per night.

Pets not allowed



Booking Enquiry to: Willowmere Guest House

arrival		rooms	
nights		type	
adults		board	B&B
children			
number of children under 10			

Your details

name
email
phone

Booking information

Special celebrations:
Children under 10 pay £10 per night.
Dogs are allowed in some rooms – please request at time of booking.

Glossary

B&B: Bed and Breakfast – no other meals are available.

VOCABULARY Solving hotel problems

1 Complete the hotel guests' problems with phrases from the box.

noise outside	boiling
no record	more expensive than I expected
no toothbrush or toothpaste	an upset stomach
free for sightseeing	an early flight
get the jacuzzi to work	before you serve breakfast

- 1 G: Hello. I'm in room 206, and I can't I was really looking forward to a hydromassage.
R:
- 2 G: Reception? This is Mrs. Dobbs here, room 403. The room is It's too hot!
R:
- 3 G: Where should I go? I've only one day
R:
- 4 G: There's of my booking, you say? But there must be!
R:
- 5 G: I've got in the morning, and haven't got an alarm clock.
R:
- 6 G: Excuse me. There's a lot of my room, and I can't sleep.
R:
- 7 G: Erm, hello? I've got I must have eaten something.
R:
- 8 G: Look here! This is I thought the bill would be about €230.
R:
- 9 G: So, you see, we must leave , and the kids are sure to be hungry.
R:
- 10 G: I forgot to pack my toilet bag, and I've got Do you have any?
R:

2 Write the receptionist's response (a-j) to the problems in exercise 1.

- a Let me have a look, sir, and tell you what it includes.
- b I'll send someone up to turn down the heating right away, madam.
- c Oh dear! Would you like to change rooms, sir?
- d I'm afraid not, madam, but there's a shop next door.
- e I could give you a wake-up call and book a taxi for you, sir.
- f I'll send someone up to have a look at it immediately.
- g I'm afraid I can't help, madam, but there's a chemist down the road. It's open 24/7.
- h Don't worry, madam. I can get the cook to make you something to take with you.
- i I could recommend a few places, sir, if you'd like.
- j Let me check again ... No, I'm afraid there's no booking under the name Howe.



GRAMMAR Second conditionals

3 Put the words into the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 you first were, a I'd book I if room.
.....
- 2 would you if happened do what it to you?
.....
- 3 better would be it went home you if.
.....
- 4 he listen him might you if called to you.
.....
- 5 you think do better would it if left we be?
.....

4 Make questions. Use the second conditional, and make any other changes necessary.

- 1 What / you do if / no hot water / your hotel bathroom?
.....
- 2 If / I ask / you / marry me / what / you say?
.....
- 3 you complain / if / it happen / to you?
.....
- 4 If / I order / breakfast in my room / how much / it cost?
.....
- 5 you think / I'm crazy / if / I buy / that hotel?
.....
- 6 you know / what to do / if / you / on your own?
.....

Learner tip

Remember to use the second conditional only for imaginary situations, or situations that cannot be changed. Although we use the past tense for this conditional, we are talking about the present or the future.

5 Give advice for the following situations. Begin with *If I were you ...*

- The hotel breakfast was awful this morning!
If I were you,
(complain / chef)
- There are no clean towels in my room!
.....
(ask / maid)
- I've never been to London before, and I want to book a hotel there.
.....
(search / Internet)
- The waiter in the hotel restaurant was really rude and unfriendly.
.....
(complain / head waiter)
- Our room is filthy, and there are no clean sheets on the bed!
.....
(tell / manager)
- I've checked my bill and they've charged me twice!
.....
(ask / refund)

LISTENING

6 10.2 You are going to listen to three conversations with a hotel receptionist, about a guest's problem. Match the problem with the correct conversation.

- a door that won't open
- the need to buy a present
- faulty air conditioning

7 10.2 Listen again and answer the questions.

- In which conversation does the receptionist give the guest some advice?
- In which conversation does the receptionist give the guest some instructions?
- Which problem is not solved?

8 Complete the sentences.

- In conversation 1, the receptionist tells Mr Wiseman to the air conditioning.
- Mr Wiseman says he can't the switch.
- He couldn't see it because he'd
- In conversation 2, the problem is urgent because Mr Arnold is at a charity dinner.
- In conversation 3, the man is celebrating his
- The receptionist suggests he buys his wife

9 Complete the advice in the following conversations.

- A: I don't know what to get my wife for her birthday.
B: If I were you, (get / perfume)
- A: My husband's stuck in the bathroom!
B: If I were you, (call / hotel manager)
- A: The air conditioning isn't working in my room.
B: If I were you, (change room)
- A: There's no hot water in my room!
B: If I were you, (ask room service / call a plumber)
- A: I'm late for an important meeting in the conference room!
B: If I were you, (ask / receptionist / call and explain / problem)
- A: I don't know where to eat tonight. I'm bored with the hotel dining room.
B: If I were you, (ask / receptionist / recommend a restaurant)

10 Put the conversation between the man and his wife in the correct order.

- W: OK, I'll phone reception for help. I won't be a minute ... It's all right, Henri. They'll send someone up in a minute. Be patient.
- M: Aaagh! ... It's no good! It won't move!
- W: What? OK! I'm coming. Give me two seconds ... Right! You pull, I'll push.
- M: Just a minute. I'm nearly ready ... Oh wait, Cherise! I can't open the door!
- W: Right. One, two, three ... go!
- M: Wait. Just one second ... OK, ready!
- W: Hurry up, Henri! We're going to be late!



READING

1 Read the passage below. Decide where it comes from.

- a a travel brochure, advertising holidays in Greece
- b a newspaper
- c a blog on the Internet

2 Choose the best ending for each sentence.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 The writer says he didn't travel much as a child because he lived | 4 As a boy, the writer used to find the |
| a in the mountains. | bouzouki |
| b in Greece. | a pleasant. |
| c by the sea. | b annoying. |
| 2 The writer remembers his childhood holidays as being | c uninteresting. |
| a adventurous. | 5 Today the writer |
| b good fun. | a realises the value of such |
| c boring. | experiences. |
| 3 One reason the family stayed at the same place every year was that | b appreciates music. |
| a it was on the beach. | c wishes he was still a boy. |
| b the owners didn't mind guests. | |
| c dogs were allowed. | |

Learner tip

Sometimes in reading tasks like the one in exercise 2, more than one option seems possible. Read the text carefully and choose the best answer.

PRONUNCIATION

3 Match the underlined vowel sounds to the correct column in the table.

<u>u</u> sually	<u>be</u> autiful	<u>u</u> ninteresting
summer	<u>s</u> untan	<u>u</u> seful
<u>c</u> ute	<u>u</u> sed to	<u>d</u> one
umbrella		

/ju:/

/ʌ/

4 10.3 Listen and check. Practise saying the words in exercise A.

5 10.4 Listen and practise speaking.

- Practise saying the telephone numbers.
0030 2510 36754
24210 89567
6979 010259
- Practise spelling these names.
Mr Kendall. That's K - E - N - D - A - L - L.
Mrs Tsiakos. That's T - S - I - A - K - O - S.
Miss Pandhi. That's P - A - N - D - H - I.

6 10.4 Listen again and check.

Memories of summer

I live in Volos, one of the most beautiful parts of mainland Greece. It lies on the East coast, at the foot of Pelion Mountain. I was brought up here, and as a boy, I remember spending long summers swimming and diving off rocks with my friends. We didn't need to travel far to have a holiday, as the sea was on our doorstep. Our favourite place was a beach on the far side of Pelion, where we used to rent rooms every year.

There were three families that went together, although other friends would come and visit for the day. The owners of the rooms didn't mind, and they also allowed us to take our dog, Achilles. Not many places in Greece accept dogs, so this was another reason we went there often. We kids used to spend all day on the beach, and most of the time in the water. There was a great rock that rose out of the water, and we all used to dive off it.

Evenings were spent barbecuing steaks and sausages, then playing hide-and-seek on the beach in the dark, while my father and his friend played their bouzoukis, and everyone else gathered round to sing. Sometimes others would bring their instruments and play, and one evening I remember a 16-year-old boy asked if he could join in with his violin! I used to think my parents were boring, doing that every night, but now I realise how magical it was, and I actually miss those summer evenings filled with music.

GRAMMAR *used to*

7 The sentences a–d are taken from the Reading text.

- 1 Which three sentences talk about past habits?
- 2 Which sentence talks about a change of opinion?
- a Our favourite place was a beach on the far side of Pelion, where we used to rent rooms every year.
- b There was a great rock that rose out of the water, and we all used to dive off it.
- c I used to think my parents were boring, doing that every night, but now I realise how magical it was ...
- d We kids used to spend all day on the beach ...

8 Rewrite the sentences below with *used to*.

- 1 When I was young, I walked to school every day.
.....
- 2 When I was a kid, I never went on holiday with my parents, so now family holidays are special to me.
.....
- 3 We went to North Wales every summer, until I went to university.
.....
- 4 My dad went fishing with his friend every morning.
.....
- 5 We stayed in the same place every year, so we made lots of friends there.
.....
- 6 I swam in the sea every day of the holidays.
.....

9 Find five mistakes and correct them.

- 1 I didn't never used to like singing round camp fires, but I do now.
- 2 I used to travel abroad with my parents as a boy, so now I enjoy exploring Britain.
- 3 We use to like going to the outdoor swimming pool.
- 4 When I was at school, we usually go on skiing trips every February.
- 5 I didn't use to play much sport, but I'm in a football team now.
- 6 Last weekend, I used to have to get up early for a hockey tournament.
- 7 We usually visit my cousins in the summer holidays.
- 8 Rob used going to summer camp every August.

Learner tip

When you use *used to* in a sentence, it is easy to make mistakes. Always check what you have written!

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 10

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 10 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Make nouns ending in *-ment* or *-ing* from the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Malik goes (climb) every weekend.
- 2 The hotel offers organised (entertain) every Tuesday and Thursday.
- 3 They made an (arrange) to meet outside the restaurant.
- 4 The hotel has a (babysit) service.
- 5 (park) facilities are at the back of the cinema.
- 6 Passing your driving test first time is quite an (achieve).

2 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1 The hotel's in a convenient | ..... |
| 2 They could find no record | ..... |
| 3 On the way, we had a close | ..... |
| 4 They finally managed to put | ..... |
| 5 It has an indoor heated | ..... |
| 6 I'd like to welcome you on | ..... |
| 7 I have many fond | ..... |
| a up the tent after an hour. | |
| b encounter with a bear. | |
| c pool and a gym, too. | |
| d behalf of all the staff of the Kent Hotel. | |
| e location, near the town centre. | |
| f memories of our trip to Tunisia. | |
| g of her booking, so she had to leave. | |

3 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 A hotel with childcare *facilities* can look after your kids for you.
- 2 If you pay the *standard rate*, you pay the normal amount.
- 3 A *demanding* hotel guest is always happy with the service.
- 4 You *doubt* something when you believe it is true.
- 5 A *chemist's* is a place where you can buy medicine.
- 6 If you *reject* an invitation to dinner, you agree to go.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb from the box.

mess turn climb take send warn

- 1 Don't worry, madam. I'll your dog out for a walk.
- 2 We need to people about that awful restaurant.
- 3 I'll someone up to deal with the problem, sir.
- 4 She had to down his invitation as she got sick.
- 5 The lift wasn't working so we the stairs to the fourth floor.
- 6 The kids around by the pool all day.

Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again.
Compare your scores.

VOCABULARY Science and nature in the news

1 Match the verbs 1-6 to the phrases they collocate with (a-f).

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1 investigate | a a new product / an attack / a rocket / an application |
| 2 find | b research / a project / development |
| 3 lunch | c news / disease / the word / lies / gossip |
| 4 spread | d experiments / research / business / an interview |
| 5 conduct | e an accident / the effect of something / a crime |
| 6 fund | f a cure / a solution / an answer |

2 Choose the correct word in *italics* to complete the sentences.

- Scientists are working hard to *find* / *investigate* a cure for the virus.
- The news soon *launched* / *spread* that the iPhone 7 was on the market.
- Is it true that the Yangtze river dolphin has *found* / *become* extinct?
- The Government has agreed to *fund* / *ban* research into an ocean clean up project.
- When the storm *hit* / *spread* the small coastal town, the residents were totally unprepared.
- Scientists and engineers at the CERN Institute spent years *conducting* / *building* the Large Hadron Collider (LHC).
- NASA *launched* / *funded* the New Horizons space probe in 2006, and it reached Pluto in 2015.
- The space probe will *spread* / *investigate* the planet Pluto.
- The council has decided to *hit* / *ban* all vehicles from the centre of town, in an effort to reduce pollution.
- Scientists are looking for ways to *conduct* / *build* experiments without using animals.

3 Complete the collocations in the sentences with the words in the box.

diseases	extinct	science block	research	coast
product	effect	smoking	experiments	cure

- The company launched its new onto the market just in time for Christmas.
- The Research Centre has banned in the building. Employees must go outside.
- The government should fund into the causes of Alzheimer's disease, so that it can be treated.
- Scientists are conducting on chimpanzees to study their behaviour when frightened or angry.
- We must try harder to save the bees, and stop them from becoming
- Sick pets can sometimes spread to people.
- Scientists are investigating the of parents' lifestyle on their children's DNA.
- Some researchers believe they have found a for Parkinson's disease.
- The forecast said that the storm is going to hit the south of England this evening.
- The university is going to build a new next year.

LISTENING



4 11.1 You are going to hear three news stories. Before you listen, talk to a partner about the cartoons. Then listen and match each story to a picture.

5 11.1 Listen again and choose the best answer.

- The first story is about a student who has made a
a recycled car. b refrigerator.
- Emily's design uses
a electricity. b the sun's energy.
- In the second story, people were worried that Tommy
a had had an accident. b had run away.
- Tommy's mother says that she was going to
a sell the dogs. b lock the garden gate.
- The weather forecast tells us that heavy rain
a fell yesterday. b is expected today.
- Drivers are told to
a phone for more information. b stay at home.

6 Use one of the words from the box to complete each sentence.

invented shed energy recycled puppy flooding

- Three days of heavy rain caused in the village of Hartington yesterday.
- Clara loved her dog when it was a cute little but was not so happy when it grew!
- The plane was by Wilbur and Orville Wright in 1903.
- I've built a in the back garden to keep my tools in.
- 20% of this new car is made from materials.
- Turn the lights off. We're trying to save

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Responding to news and comments

7 Five of the responses to the sentences below are not correct. Correct them.

- 1 A: Kate's just had a baby!
B: Really? That's terrible!
.....
- 2 A: It's great to hear some good news for a change.
B: Absolutely!
.....
- 3 A: Hey! They're testing a new drug to treat cancer and the results are very good.
B: Really? That's great news!
.....
- 4 A: They're going to pull down those old buildings by the river and create a park there.
B: Definitely.
.....
- 5 A: They should do something about the rubbish outside.
B: Really? That's awful!
.....
- 6 A: I've passed my exams! We should celebrate!
B: Great idea!
.....
- 7 A: We should take boys' old clothes to the children's home.
B: Really? That's interesting.
.....
- 8 A: This article says that goats are really useful animals.
B: Absolutely!
.....

8 Match the responses below with the gaps in conversations 1 and 2.

No. So is it going to snow?
Really? That's amazing!
They should do more
Really? That's awful!
Maybe we should

Conversation 1

- A: I heard on the radio that a 21-year-old designed a fridge in her grandad's shed.
B: 1.....
A: Yes, I know. It works without electricity, using the sun. She's shared her idea with people in Africa, and helped to build more out there.
B: 2..... to help people in Africa.
A: Definitely.

Conversation 2

- C: Did you hear the weather forecast for tomorrow?
D: 3.....
C: No, but there's going to be heavy rain all over this area.
D: 4.....
C: I know. There are warnings of floods, too. And we're going out for the day!
D: Yeah, well I'm not sure. 5..... stay at home, and go another day.
C: Yeah, good idea.

PRONUNCIATION Word stress

9 How many syllables do the words below have? Mark the syllable which is stressed.

- 1 population 2 research 3 invent 4 experiment 5 pollution 6 energy

10 Write the words from the box in the correct stress list.

study	research	population	extinct	energy	experiment	explore	shortage
solution	investigate	natural	pollution	participant	invent	resources	protect
2 syllables, stress on first syllable	2 syllables, stress on second syllable	3 syllables, stress on first syllable	3 syllables, stress on second syllable	4 syllables, stress on second syllable	4 syllables, stress on third syllable		

11 11.2 Listen and practise saying the words.

VOCABULARY Animals

- 1 Write the animals from the box below in the correct column. Some animals belong in more than one category.

dog	cat	rabbit	sheep	hen	lion
cow	shark	dolphin	whale	pigeon	horse
parrot	tiger	eagle	panther		

pets	farm animals	marine animals	birds	wild cats

- 2 Complete the article with words from the box.

dogs	less	bones	ground	workers
success	excited	school		

HERO RATS



Bart Weetjens trains giant rats in Tanzania to find unexploded land mines and bombs in the ¹..... Weetjens says that rats are better at doing the job than ²..... because they have a very keen sense of smell, and they don't get as nervous or ³..... as dogs. Also, they weigh much ⁴....., so they are less likely to cause the mines to explode and be killed.

Weetjens has already had some ⁵..... in Africa with his team of rats. They cleared the area round a ⁶..... in Mozambique, and made it safe for the children to return to the classroom. At the beginning of the year, they also cleared 5000 m² of land at Pfukwe, after ⁷..... bringing electricity to the area had found mines there. During the clearance, the rats discovered 32 unexploded mines, and found the ⁸..... of people and animals that had died in the minefield over the years.

Glossary

mine: a type of bomb that is placed in the ground and explodes when someone touches it

bomb: an object made of materials that explode and cause great damage

READING

- 3 Read the texts. In the table, tick which environmental problems each idea helps to solve.

	magnetic fridge	methane farming	green machine	floating wind turbines
air pollution				
water shortage				
energy resources				

Cool green solutions for our warm planet

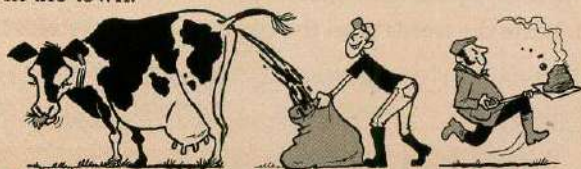
A Magnetic Fridge

Refrigerators and air conditioners eat up more electricity in the home than any other machine. Now there is a new cooling method that works using a system of magnets to make metals cool down. Cambridge, the UK company that is designing this new system, says that its fridges and air conditioners will reduce the use of electrical power by up to 40%.



B Methane Farming

The world's largest biogas factory in Penkun, Germany, makes fuel from animal waste. It produces 84,000 tonnes of the gas methane every year. This natural gas is then used as a fuel which produces enough heat for the 50,000 people who live in the town.



Glossary

biogas: gas that comes from dead plants or animals, or animal waste

fuel: any substance like coal, or gas, that can be burnt to produce heat or energy

4 Which idea(s)

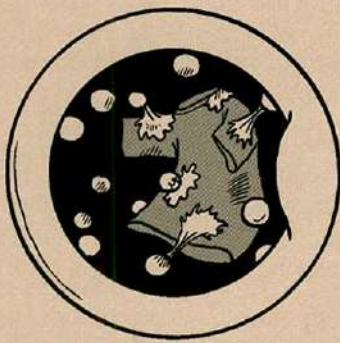
- 1 reduce the amount of electricity used?
- 2 produce electricity?
- 3 saves water?
- 4 use natural sources of power?
- 5 performs two tasks?

5 Match the words (1-5) with the definitions (a-e).

- | | |
|------------|--|
| 1 magnet | a a country's national electricity |
| 2 emission | b network |
| 3 offshore | c in the sea |
| 4 float | d sit on top of water |
| 5 grid | e a piece of metal which pulls other metals towards it |
| | f when gases are released into the air |

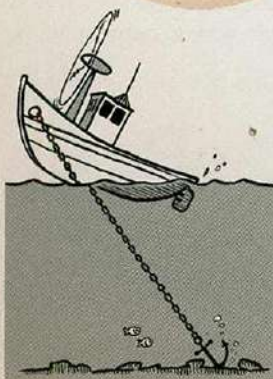
C Green Machine

Washing machines also require a lot of energy, as well as huge amounts of water. Now, a new company called Xeros has developed the world's first 'almost waterless' washing machine. Small magnetic metal balls attract dirt from clothes, and leave them dry. The machine uses 90% less water and 40% less electricity than normal washing and drying machines. If all households in the world change to this machine, annual CO₂ emissions will fall by 28 million tonnes.



D Floating Wind Turbines

At present, most offshore wind turbines stand on a base that is fixed to the sea floor. This means that they can only be placed in shallow water, close to land. However, the strongest winds are often further out at sea, where the water is deep. Norway has solved this problem by developing the world's first floating wind turbine. Hywind floats on the water like a boat, and is anchored ten kilometres off the Norwegian coast. It will begin feeding power into the national electricity grid this month.



GRAMMAR Past perfect simple

6 Underline the actions in the sentences below. Then decide which action happened first and which happened second.

- 1 The biologist checked the results of the experiment and called his boss.
- 2 The chemistry student realised she had followed the wrong instructions.
- 3 Ayodele had already finished his physics exam when the teacher told them there were 30 minutes left.
- 4 Dr Mukabe looked at the bones and knew she had discovered a dinosaur.
- 5 Night had fallen by the time they got home from their trip to the Science Museum.

7 Complete the sentences below with the past perfect of the verb in brackets.

- 1 She decided to leave after she the experiment. (finish)
- 2 When they found the cat, it by a car. (be hit)
- 3 Before he met her, he in love. (never be)
- 4 I suddenly realised I to tell Sarah about the party. (forget)
- 5 They soon learnt that the experiment successful. (not be)
- 6 When police got to the bank, the thieves (already leave)
- 7 The scientist realised that he to time his experiment. (forget)
- 8 Archaeologists studied the skeleton and realised they a dinosaur. (discover)

8 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past perfect simple to complete the article.

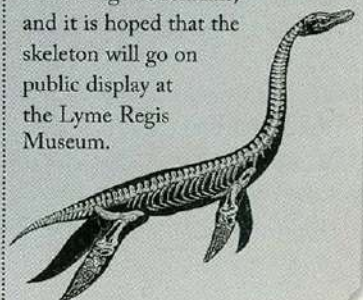
200 million year-old skeleton looks like the Loch Ness monster

A young couple have found the remains of a Loch Ness-style creature that ¹..... (live) in the English Channel 200 million years ago. Scientists say that the skeleton, which is 70% complete, belongs to a 12-foot-long plesiosaur. This creature ²..... (exist) during the Jurassic period of 150 to 200 million years ago, and looked like the Loch Ness monster with its long neck and tail.

Tracey Marler and Chris Moore, who ³..... (discover) the remains on a beach last week, said that many of the bones were in the correct position when they found them, so they could see

what the dinosaur ⁴..... (look) like when it was alive. It was also possible to see how it ⁵..... (die), said Mr Moore, an expert in fossils. There were teeth marks on some bones from another animal. So it seemed that another creature ⁶..... (eat) the plesiosaur.

Scientists are still examining the remains, and it is hoped that the skeleton will go on public display at the Lyme Regis Museum.



GRAMMAR Passives

1 Rewrite the following sentences with the correct form of the passive.

- Michael Reynolds developed the first earthship in the 1970s.
The first earthship
- People can build earthships from available recycled materials.
Earthships
- They use worn out car tyres to build the external walls.
Worn out car tyres
- They fill the tyres with rammed earth to make the walls.
The tyres
- They built the first earthship in the UK in Fife, in Scotland.
The first earthship
- Could you use glass bottles to build walls?
Could glass bottles?
- Can you heat the earthships naturally?
Can the earthships?
- They heat the buildings with solar panels.
The buildings

2 Choose the correct phrase (a or b) to complete the sentences.

- Seven new species of tiny frog recently in the Brazilian rainforest.
a were discovered b discovered
- Scientists believe that dinosaurs about 65 million years ago.
a disappeared b were disappeared
- Playing video games can people's brain activity.
a improve b be improved
- Scientists say that 3D printing can now to print human body parts.
a use b be used
- Recently, people in southern Australia by hundreds of spiders falling from the sky.
a rained on b were rained on
- 'Spider rain', also known as 'ballooning', is how spiders in groups from one place to another.
a move b are moved
- There are only five northern white rhinos left in the world. Can they?
a save b be saved
- Great white sharks can to 15–20 feet (4.6–6.1 metres) long.
a grow b be grown

DEVELOPING WRITING

An email – expressing an opinion

3 Anagele is a Kenyan student at a college in Brighton. Below is an email he wrote yesterday to his friend at home. Read the email and match the headings below (1–5) to each paragraph (a–e).

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1 The weather | 4 Opening |
| 2 Closing | 5 The town |
| 3 His flatmate | |

4 We use the words in the box below to connect our ideas. Use them to complete the email.

but one thing although secondly however another

From: Anagele K
To: kitunzi@gmail.afr
Subject: First impressions of Brighton

a) Hi, Kitunzi!

How are things? I've been in Brighton for two weeks now, and I want to tell you how I'm getting on.

b) The town's really nice. ¹..... I like about it is that it's a holiday town, so there are lots of tourists. This makes it lively. ²....., there are some great bars and restaurants to go to in the evenings, ³..... they're rather expensive. We usually eat at home, and then just go out for a drink.

c) My flatmate is an Italian guy, called Fabio. He's crazy, but great fun. When we go out, he talks to everyone, so we've already met lots of people. ⁴..... thing I like is my college. The teachers are really enthusiastic, and I'm enjoying the course – except for the homework!

d) The English weather is not so good! Grey skies every day! I haven't seen the sun since I got here! ⁵..... the buildings are comfortable and very warm inside, ⁶..... the dark atmosphere outside sometimes makes me miserable. I really miss the African sun. In general, though, I like it here.

e) Write and tell me how you're getting on.

Bye for now,
Anagele

Language note

Although and *but* connect opposite ideas, such as a good point and a bad point. Look at how they are used in a sentence.

Although I like living in Italy, I don't like the heat in the summer.

I like living in Italy, but I don't like the heat in the summer.

5 Connect the sentences in the pairs below. Use **although, but or another thing**.

- 1 I like most animals. I don't like rats.
.....
- 2 I know that more homes are needed in the city centre. There should be parks.
.....
- 3 Paris is a beautiful city, with wide streets. I like the cafés on street corners with tables outside.
.....
- 4 It's a good thing that governments are talking about climate change. They should do more.
.....
- 5 I like living by the sea. It gets cold in the winter.
.....
- 6 I like sweets. They're not healthy.
.....

6 Write an email to a friend in another country. Describe your town, and say what the weather is like there. Think of two things you like, and something that you don't like. Use the words from exercises 4 and 5 to connect your ideas.

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 11

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 11 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb in the box.

investigate	conduct	fund	witness	ban
-------------	---------	------	---------	-----

- 1 Margot a nasty accident outside her home last night.
- 2 The organisation has agreed to research into Alzheimer's.
- 3 The hospital has the use of mobile phones within the building.
- 4 Scientists are experiments to see how people react to the drug.
- 5 Police are the disappearance of a ten-year-old boy.

2 Choose the correct word.

- 1 Divers stand in a *net / cage* to watch the sharks underwater.
- 2 Scientists have *suspected / detected* signs of life on Mars.
- 3 There is not enough *effect / evidence* to arrest the woman for the crime.
- 4 *Freezing / Windy* temperatures are expected this weekend.
- 5 Bernard Morin lost his *weight / sight* aged six, but still became a mathematician.

3 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1 I dropped my phone and used sticky | a your health. |
| 2 Maria G. Mayer was awarded | b the rocket into space. |
| 3 Doctors without borders save | c tape to hold it together. |
| 4 Taking echinacea can boost | d the Nobel prize for Physics in 1963. |
| 5 This morning they launched | e hundreds of lives in war zones. |

4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- 1 Anil was witness the birth of his twin boys.
- 2 Magda insisted staying for the experiment.
- 3 They were always nice to each other public.
- 4 The dog barked loudly the postman.
- 5 He appeared court as a witness yesterday.

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- 1 I broke my mother's favourite vase yesterday. ACCIDENT
- 2 Ananya talked for an hour about problems. ENVIRONMENT
- 3 The boy's act of made the old woman smile. KIND
- 4 She stood up and looked at her classmates CONFIDENT
- 5 Children need the of a loving family. SECURE

Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again. Compare your scores.



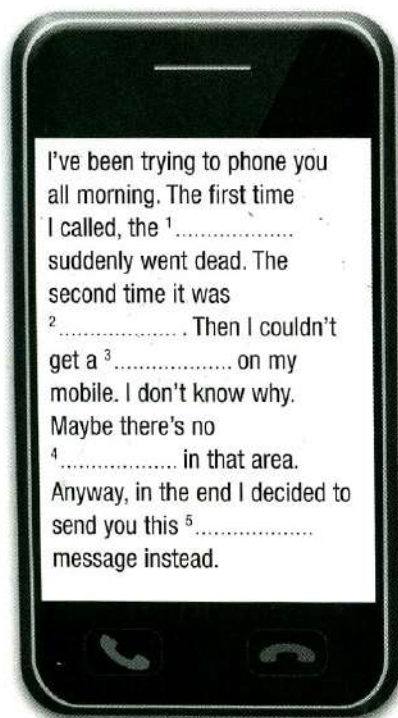
VOCABULARY Using phones

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm sorry, he's not here at the moment. Can he call you *through / back* later?
- 2 Can you put me *through / off* to the sales department please?
- 3 The receptionist put me *up / on* hold for over ten minutes.
- 4 I couldn't ask him about his plans because we got cut *up / off* in the middle of our conversation.
- 5 He was really angry with me and *hung back / up* before I could explain.
- 6 She's out of the office today. You could *shout / call* her on her mobile.
- 7 I keep calling them but I can't get through. The line's *busy / full*.
- 8 I don't want to phone him. He talks for hours. It's easier to *text / type* him.

2 Choose the correct word to fill the gaps.

coverage text signal busy line



Language note

Mobile phone (or *mobile*) is used in British English. In American English, people say *cellphone*.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Explaining where people are

3 Complete the phone conversation with these phrases.

from home	sick	the factory
a meeting	on business	visiting a client

- Caller: Could I speak to Ali Khalil, please?
 Secretary: I'm afraid he's away ¹ He won't be back in the office until Monday now.
 Caller: Is Sukhi Pandhi available, then?
 Secretary: Certainly. Hold the line, please. No, I'm sorry. She's in ²
 Caller: OK. How about Vicky Reece?
 Secretary: She's off ³ today. Would you like to leave a message?
 Caller: No, I'd like to speak to someone. Is Mike Jones there, then?
 Secretary: One moment, please. I'm afraid he's out ⁴ I'm not sure what time he'll be back.
 Caller: I don't believe this! What about Rob Downey? Surely he's there?
 Secretary: I'm terribly sorry, but he's working ⁵ today. Can I help you?
 Caller: This is John Carpenter, the managing director! I'm at ⁶ and my car's broken down. Is there anyone who can come and pick me up?

4 Write replies to the questions by putting the sentences (a-c) into the right order.

- 1 Hello. Is that Simon?
 a Simon's not up yet.
 b No, it's Joe.
 c Is it urgent?
- 2 Hi, is Christine there?
 a She'll be back next week.
 b She's away on holiday.
 c No, I'm afraid she isn't.
- 3 Hi, Boris?
 a Boris is in a meeting at the moment.
 b Can I take a message?
 c No, it's Dima actually.
- 4 Hello. Could I speak to Ms. Seidel, please?
 a She'll be back at about 3 o'clock.
 b I'm afraid not.
 c She's out of the office this morning.

5 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1 I'm afraid he's been off | a a meeting at the moment. |
| 2 I'm sorry but she's in | b available right now. |
| 3 I'm afraid that he's just walked out | c of the door. |
| 4 I'm sorry but he's working at | d home today. |
| 5 I'm afraid that he's on | e away from her desk. |
| 6 Unfortunately she's | f sick all week. |
| 7 I'm sorry, he's not | g line's engaged at the moment. |
| 8 Can she call you back? Her | h holiday this week. |

LISTENING

6 12.1 Listen to the phone conversation and underline the five mistakes in this message.

MESSAGE

Tina Morrison called about your meeting next Tuesday. She's going to be away on holiday that day, so can you change the meeting to Thursday? Two o'clock at her office. If there are any problems, please call her mobile on 08857 678548.



7 12.1 Listen again and rewrite the message correctly.

MESSAGE

GRAMMAR yet, already, still and just

8 Complete these sentences with yet, already, still or just.

- A: What was that noise?
B: I think someone has dropped a plate.
- A: Can I see your most recent essay?
B: I'm sorry, I haven't finished it
- A: Can you write to Mr Hudson to apologise for the mistake?
B: There's no need. I've emailed him.
- A: Have you managed to get Samira on the phone?
B: No, I haven't but I'm trying.

9 Use the words in brackets to write answers to these questions, using yet, already, still or just.

- A: What is this terrible mess?
B: I'm sorry.
(I / spill my coffee)
- A: Can you phone Mr Thorsen please?
B: There's no need.
(I / call him)
- A: Is Anita in the office today?
B: I don't know.
(I / not see her)
- A: Has the delivery arrived?
B: No.
(We / wait for it)
- A: Have you told them we're going to be late?
B: No.
(I / not speak to them)
- A: Where's Roger?
B: He was here a second ago. I think
(he / go out for a moment)
- A: Has she found her mobile phone?
B: No.
(She / look for it)
- A: Will you send them an invoice for those goods we sent them?
B: I don't have to.
(They / pay us)

Language note

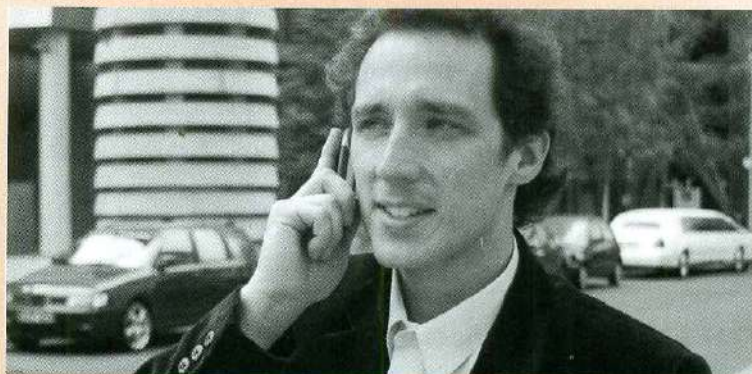
Just, still and already normally go between the auxiliary and main verbs. *Yet* normally comes at the end of the sentence.

READING

1 Quickly read the article. Tick (✓) the best summary.

- a Mobile phone companies are now making big profits from poor people in Africa and Asia.
- b The mobile phone is helping poor people to earn money and improve their living conditions.
- c Schools are facing serious problems because teenagers are wasting too much time on their mobile phones.
- d The spread of the mobile phone is worrying governments in many countries.

How Mobile Phones are Changing the World



1 When mobile phones first appeared in the early 1990s, they were status symbols for wealthy businesspeople. Phones were big and heavy, and the signal was usually poor, so people often shouted when they used them. Over the next ten years, technology improved and prices fell considerably. In many rich countries the mobile phone became the teenager's favourite toy. In just 20 years, mobiles have changed the way people do business and socialise in rich countries. But mobile technology is having a dramatic impact on life in the developing world too.

2 In Africa, arrival of inexpensive mobile phones in areas where there are no landline telephones has already helped many people to start small businesses. Before mobile phones, starting a business often meant renting a shop or an office, which was expensive. If customers called when the owner was out, business was lost. Now business owners can write their mobile number on an advertisement, put it on a noticeboard and wait for customers to call them. As a result, thousands of people can find a market for their goods or services.

3 In India, fishermen now use their mobiles to find the best market for their fish before they return to shore. A few quick calls on their mobile phones can tell them which ports to visit to find the best price for their fish and avoid unnecessary waste.

4 Farmers, too, are using mobile phones. Around the world, new mobile services provide local weather forecasts to help them plan their work. They can also have advice on farming methods and up-to-date information about prices for their crops sent to their mobile.

5 As mobile phones make business easier, they improve living conditions for hundreds of thousands of people around the world. And as they spread, becoming cheaper and more popular, it seems likely that they will change the world in ways that we can't imagine yet.



2 Match the words and phrases (1-8) to their definitions (a-h).

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 1 status symbol | a fruit and vegetables produced by a farm |
| 2 socialise | b big effect |
| 3 dramatic impact | c poorer countries which are growing economically |
| 4 developing world | d something which shows you are rich and successful |
| 5 market | e something that cannot be used. |
| 6 crops | f the way something is done |
| 7 method | g meet friends and acquaintances |
| 8 waste | h a place where things are bought and sold |

3 Read paragraph 1 again and answer these questions.

- When did mobile phones first appear?
.....
- Why did people often shout when they used them?
.....
- What happened to the price of mobiles over the next ten years?
.....
- Whose favourite toy did they become?
.....
- What have mobile phones changed in rich countries?
.....
- Where else are mobile phones having an impact now?
.....

4 Read paragraph 2. Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- Mobile phones are very expensive in Africa at the moment.
- Mobile phones have helped many Africans start businesses.
- It has always been cheap to rent shops and offices in Africa.
- Business owners often leave their mobile phone numbers on noticeboards.
- At the moment, mobile phones are only being used to sell services and not goods.
- There are places in Africa where there are no landline telephones.

5 Read paragraphs 3 to 5 and complete these sentences.

- Fishermen in India use their mobiles to find
.....
- This helps them to avoid
.....
- There are now mobile phone services for farmers which provide
.....
- This helps farmers to
.....
- They can also get advice on
.....
- In the future mobiles will change the world in ways
.....

VOCABULARY Forming negatives

6 Make negative adjectives using the words in the box. Write them in the correct column.

wise	legal	appropriate	fortunate
polite	happy	expected	practical
fair	comfortable	common	patient
convenient	possible	natural	rational
pleasant			

un-	
im-	
in-	
il-	
ir-	

7 Replace the words in *italics* with negative adjectives from exercise 6.

- He's been *miserable* since he lost all his money.
.....
- The way you spoke to her was *not suitable*.
.....
- They were *very rude* to the waiter in the restaurant.
.....
- It is *against the law* to park your car outside the Town Hall.
- He was *very unlucky* to fall over and break his leg.
.....
- It is *not clever* to feed animals in a zoo.
- Her father gets *angry easily*.
- I know it's a little *crazy*, but I'm scared of butterflies.
.....
- The result was *not predicted*.
- I'm afraid this is an *awful* time to call, as he's sleeping.

PRONUNCIATION Same or different?

8 12.2 Listen to the underlined vowel sounds in these pairs of words. Decide whether they are the same (S), or different (D).

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 polite | possible |
| 2 possible | common |
| 3 common | comfortable |
| 4 obtain | opinion |
| 5 hole | hold |
| 6 operation | remote |

DEVELOPING WRITING Text and email – abbreviations

1 Look at the text message and find abbreviations for these words and phrases.

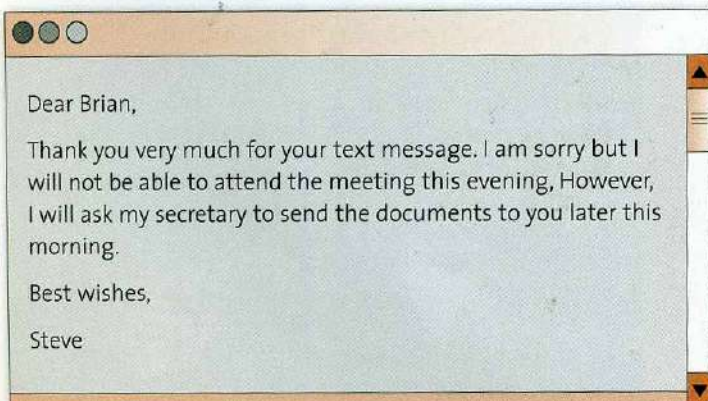
- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------|------------|-------|
| 1 are | ..... | 8 meeting | ..... |
| 2 as soon as possible | ..... | 9 possible | ..... |
| 3 documents | ..... | 10 see | ..... |
| 4 evening | ..... | 11 text | ..... |
| 5 for | ..... | 12 to | ..... |
| 6 later | ..... | 13 you | ..... |
| 7 message | ..... | 14 your | ..... |



Language note

You don't have to use abbreviations in text messages and there are no rules about how to write them. The abbreviations in this activity are quite common but are not always used.

2 Read Steve's email reply. Rewrite the text message as an email without abbreviations.



VOCABULARY Reporting crimes

3 Complete the three phone calls reporting crimes with the correct form of the words from the box.

steal	make	kick	crash	hack	get	come	kick
grab	text	have	hit	threaten	follow	run	buy

Caller 1: It was horrible! I ¹ home from work and discovered that someone had ² my front door down. Two guys were in my living room, and they started ³ me. They wanted money, but I don't keep any at home. Then one of them just started ⁴ and ⁵ me for no reason. I screamed for help, but our neighbours were ⁶ a party and ⁷ a lot of noise, so no one heard me. Suddenly, the other guy ⁸ my bag, and they both ⁹ off.

Caller 2: I'm not sure how it happened, but I ¹⁰ something online last week, and I can only think they ¹¹ my bank details from there. Anyway, they ¹² into my account, and ¹³ €5,000. That's almost all my savings! I need to cancel everything immediately!

Caller 3: I couldn't believe it! This guy asked me the way to the M4, so I told him to ¹⁴ me, as I was going that way. Anyway, we came to the junction and he just ¹⁵ into the back of my new car! He was ¹⁶, of course, and so didn't see the red light.

LISTENING

4 12.3 Listen to the recorded message and answer these questions.

- What kind of organisation has the caller phoned?
- How many options are there?
- What can you do if you press 1?
- Which number do you press for technical support?
- Which option does the caller choose?
- How long is the wait time?

5 12.3 Listen again and complete the sentences. Then listen again and check your answers.

- For information about opening, press two.
- Your call to us.
- A member of our dedicated customer services team to speak to you shortly.
- Please note that calls may be recorded for
- Unfortunately we are currently experiencing a calls.
- You may find it to call back later.

GRAMMAR Reporting speech

6 Choose the correct verb tense in these sentences reporting speech.

- I'm helping my friend with her homework.
You said you *helped* / *were helping* your friend with her homework.
- I haven't seen the new James Bond movie.
You said you *weren't seeing* / *hadn't seen* the new James Bond movie.
- I phoned you twice on Friday.
You said you *have phoned* / *had phoned* twice on Friday.
- We're going to the theatre this evening.
You said you *have been going* / *were going* to the theatre this evening.
- We've seen them twice this month.
You said you *had seen* / *have seen* them twice this month.
- We didn't hear from them yesterday.
You said you *haven't heard* / *hadn't heard* from them yesterday.

7 Put these sentences into reported speech.

- Anna posted the letter on Tuesday.
She said Anna
- I'm sending you the books today.
You said you
- We haven't been to the office all day.
You said you
- I didn't bring my notes with me.
You said you
- They haven't delivered the letters yet.
They told us they
- I'm going to the post office right now.
You said you

8 Complete the sentences with *said*, *asked* or *told*.

- The woman I spoke to that there weren't any left in my size.
- The guy on reception me what the reason for my visit was.
- The secretary me he was in a meeting.
- She me if I would like to leave a message.
- Mr. Stevens me to send in my report the next day.
- He it was urgent.

Language note

When you are writing sentences in reported speech, remember to check the personal pronouns. They will sometimes (but not always!) have to change.

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 12

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 12 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------|
| 1 Can you confirm | ..... |
| 2 Certainly, sir. Hold | ..... |
| 3 One moment and I'll put | ..... |
| 4 The line's busy. Can she call | ..... |
| 5 My battery's low. I'll have to | ..... |
| 6 The signal's poor. We may get | ..... |
| a the line, please. | d your password? |
| b you back? | e cut off. |
| c hang up. | f you through. |

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- There's no for my mobile in this area. COVER
- I've no milk left and the shops are closed.
How! CONVENIENT
- I accidentally deleted your message.
Can you it? SEND
- Her decision to leave was
I can't understand it. RATIONAL
- Your arrival is; I thought you
were coming tomorrow! EXPECT
- He made a good impression INITIAL

3 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- A *domestic drill* is a household tool.
- A *fine* is a gap or space in something.
- If something is *scary*, it is exciting.
- A *leaflet* is a piece of paper which gives information about something.
- A *signal* is a small animal with eight legs.
- If something is *urgent*, it is very important and you need to do it immediately.
- If you *misuse* something, you use it efficiently.
- If you are *fair*, you behave well.

4 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

continuously threatening campaign transfer relatively

- Wait a moment and I'll you to the Complaints department.
- They decided to against the use of mobile phones in theatres.
- I've been calling, but I can't get through.
- Setting up the account was easy.
- He started making phone calls, and so she called the police.

Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again.
Compare your scores.

VOCABULARY Films

- 1** Each group of words (1–6) describes a kind of film. Write down the kind of film in the box.

- 1 special effects, costumes, space
- 2 the past, costumes, family, society
- 3 car chases and explosions, special effects
- 4 complicated plot, scary, violent
- 5 funny, laughter, happy ending
- 6 violent, special effects, kung fu

- 2** Choose the most suitable word or phrase.

- 1 A scary, violent film is called *an action / a horror* movie.
- 2 A science-fiction film usually has a lot of *violence / special effects*.
- 3 A historical drama is a film that is set in the *past / future*.
- 4 Romantic comedies are often quite *predictable / scary*. You know what's going to happen in the end.
- 5 Jackie Chan stars in lots of *war / martial arts* movies set in Hong Kong.
- 6 Musicals usually have *scary / romantic* plots.

- 3** Answer the quiz. If you don't know the answer, guess!

LISTENING

- 4** You are going to hear two people talking about three films. Match the title to the kind of film you think it will be.

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|---|----------|
| 1 | <i>Run and Hide</i> | a | drama |
| 2 | <i>The Mansford Saga</i> | b | comedy |
| 3 | <i>Mr Pickles</i> | c | thriller |

- 5**  **13.1** Listen and check your answers.

- 6**  **13.1** Listen again. Match the films to the names below.

- A *The Mansford Saga* B *Run and Hide* C *Mr Pickles*

- | | | |
|---|-------------------|-------|
| 1 | Thierry Dumand | ..... |
| 2 | Jeffrey Hinds | ..... |
| 3 | Antonio Torres | ..... |
| 4 | Catherine Pickard | ..... |
| 5 | Andreas Dumas | ..... |
| 6 | Zena Williams | ..... |

- 7** Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 Abha is searching the Internet to find out what's on at the cinema.
- 2 Antonio Torres is the star of *Run and Hide*.
- 3 Brad has already seen *Run and Hide*.
- 4 Abha wants to see *The Mansford Saga*.
- 5 They decide to go and see the Thierry Durmand film.
- 6 *The Partygoer* is on at the Palace Cinema.

Film Quiz

- 1 The first proper cinema showing only films opened in ...

- A** Paris in 1897 **B** New Orleans in 1902
C Los Angeles in 1895

- 22 The best-paid actor in 2008 was ...

- A** Johnny Depp **B** Will Smith
C Heath Ledger

- 3 A historical drama is sometimes called a ...

- A** costume drama **B** effects drama **C** hat drama

- 4 The movie capital of India is called ...

- A** Hollywood **B** Bollywood **C** Dollywood

- 5 The most successful movie in the world until now is ...

- A** Avatar
B Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone
C Casablanca

- 6 The first films with sound were called ...

- A** singing movies **B** talking movies
C laughing movies

- 7 The most famous prizes for film actors are called ...

- A** Homers **B** Oscars **C** Basils

- 8 The biggest film industry outside the USA is based in ...

- A** Egypt **B** Brazil **C** India

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

supposed to

8 Match the following statements (1–6) with the subjects (a–f).

- 1 I'd love to hear Keiko Matsui play. She's supposed to be magical.
- 2 I've never been, but it's supposed to be a beautiful place.
- 3 They're supposed to have an excellent selection of wines.
- 4 I haven't read it, but the plot is supposed to be quite complicated.
- 5 I haven't seen it, but Daniel Day Lewis is supposed to be superb in it.
- 6 There's an exhibition of his work at the Tate Gallery at the moment.
It's supposed to be impressive.

- a New Zealand
- b film
- c a painter
- d a musician
- e a restaurant
- f a book

9 Complete the mini-dialogues with a suitable phrase from the box.

why don't you	what are you doing	amazing	are supposed to
do you fancy	really talented	would you like	is supposed to

- 1 A: Jen,¹ this afternoon?
Have you got any plans?
B: I'm thinking of going to see a film.²
to come?
A: I don't know. What's on?
B: The new Johnny Depp film, at the Hippodrome. It³
..... be really good.
A: OK. I like Johnny Depp. What time does it start?
- 2 C: Have you got any plans for tomorrow, Tom?
D: Not really. Why?
C: I'm thinking of going to the new Magdalena Abakanowicz exhibition.
Would you like to come?
D: Isn't she the sculptor who designed the *Aggra* figures in Grant Park?
C: That's the one. I think she's⁴
D: They're supposed to be⁵!
Nine feet high, or something like that. OK, I'll come.
- 3 E: Are you doing anything this evening, Despina?
F: Actually, I'm thinking of going to the Kool Kats concert.
⁶ come with me?
E: Kool Kats? They're that teenage band, aren't they? They
⁷ be very good.
F: So,⁸ it?
E: OK, then.

GRAMMAR -ed / -ing adjectives

10 Choose the correct adjective in each sentence.

- 1 The film was all right, but I got a bit *bored* / *boring* at the beginning.
- 2 It had an *interested* / *interesting* plot, but the acting was rather poor.
- 3 I'm quite *exciting* / *excited* about going to see the Michael Jackson film. It's supposed to be really good.
- 4 I was *shocking* / *shocked* by the amount of violence in that film.
- 5 I'd read the book and really enjoyed it, but the film was *disappointing* / *disappointed*.
- 6 I find that actress so *annoying* / *annoyed*! She's the same in every role.
- 7 We've had a *tired* / *tiring* day shopping in town, so let's watch a DVD at home tonight.
- 8 I was *confused* / *confusing* by the ending. Why did he leave like that?

11 Rewrite the sentences with the correct adjective form of the verb in *italics*.

- 1 Can you stop that? It's starting to *annoy* me.
Can you stop that? It's becoming
- 2 Jeffrey Hinds' performance really *surprised* me.
I was by Jeffrey Hinds' performance.
- 3 Ian's behaviour *worries* me. He's been acting really strange lately.
I'm about Ian's strange behaviour lately.
- 4 That fight scene *disgusted* me. It was too violent.
I found that fight scene It was too violent.
- 5 Too much talking in a film *bore* me. I want action and suspense!
I find films with a lot of talking and not much action
- 6 The dialogue *amazed* me. It was so clever!
It was how clever the dialogue was.

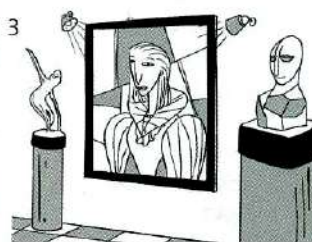
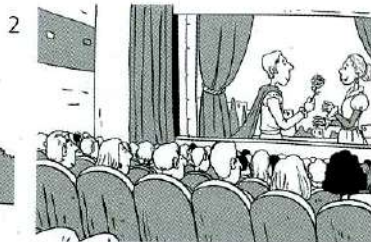
GRAMMAR Noun phrases

1 Make a list of noun phrases using a word from box A with one from box B.

A	
film	film
fashion	cinema
photo of	
works of	

B	
my family	director
cameraman	audience
industry	art

2 Match one of the phrases from exercise 1 with each of the pictures below.



3 Complete the sentences with one of the noun phrases from exercise 1.

- There's a lot of competition in the, and it's hard for designers to become successful.
- The told the actors to do the scene again.
- Thieves stole some valuable from the local gallery last night.
- The film has delighted all over the world.
- This is my favourite, as everyone's here, even Uncle Joe.
- I'd love to be a for National Geographic one day.

4 Choose the correct phrase (a or b) to complete the sentences.

- My dream is to become a
a designer of fashion b fashion designer
- Money is not as important to me as a good
a quality of life b life of quality
- My kids love watching, as it's got some really interesting documentaries.
a Discovery Channel b Channel of Discovery
- I don't often go to the theatre, as the is rather high in this country.
a tickets cost b cost of tickets
- I once went on a, but didn't win anything.
a show of quizzes b quiz show
- People often disagree about the
a issue of violence in films b violence of films issue
- I hate getting stuck in a on a Friday evening, when everyone's leaving the city for the weekend.
a traffic jam b jam of traffic

- James paints beautiful pictures and shows a real
a fine art interest b interest in fine art
- Have you read any of? She's written five.
a the books of Kate b Kate's books
- I'm thinking of becoming the local gym. How much does it cost to join?
a a gym member of b a member of

PRONUNCIATION -ed

5 Place the following past participles in the correct column.

excited	bored	tired	disappointed
interested	starred	amazed	treated
played	surprised	directed	recorded

/ɪd/	/d/
excited	bored

6 13.2 Listen and check.

7 Practise saying the words.

Language note

Where a verb ends in -d, -de, -t or -te, we pronounce the -ed ending of the past participle /ɪd/.

READING

8 Read the movie blog below. Decide which film is

- 1 a fantasy
- 2 a drama
- 3 a romantic comedy

9 Which film(s)

- 1 is frightening?
- 2 is amusing?
- 3 have a complicated plot?
- 4 is about human kindness?
- 5 contain some violence?
- 6 is surprising?

10 Make a list of adjectives that end with *-ing* from the reviews below. Add the verb form.

adjective	verb
<i>moving</i>	<i>move</i>

My favourite film!

A Amélie star rating: ★★★★★

Kylie from Australia wrote:
I've seen a number of good movies in the last few years, but none as moving as this simple French story about the life of an ordinary girl. There are few special effects, and no exciting car chases, but the audience is taken on a magical bike ride with the heroine through the streets of Paris. Amélie is a funny, imaginative young woman, who tries to bring a little happiness to the people around her. As she does this, she falls in love. The director has captured the beauty of the simple things in life in this wonderful story, and shows us the extraordinary side of ordinary people's characters. Audrey Tautou is excellent as Amélie. I saw this film in the cinema when it first came out, and have watched it five times on DVD since then.

B Pan's Labyrinth star rating: ★★★★★

Dino from Brazil wrote:
I had heard a lot about this film before I saw it, so I was worried that I would find it disappointing. However, it was amazing! Critics have been calling it *Alice in Wonderland* for adults, and I think this is true. The story is set in post-Civil War Spain, during a time of violence and hatred. A young girl called Ofelia, played by Ivana Baquero, escapes from a cruel reality into a fantasy world. *Pan's Labyrinth* is the best film that director Guillermo del Toro has ever made. He moves the action easily between Ofelia's imaginary and real worlds. The violence in Ofelia's real life is shocking, but necessary, for it shows her desperate need for escape and makes her dream world seem even more magical. The scenery inside the labyrinth is fantastic, the monsters are scary, the acting is superb, and all this is accompanied by a wonderful musical score.

C Slumdog Millionaire star rating: ★★★★★☆

Margarhita from Spain wrote:
Slumdog Millionaire is a film that both shocked and surprised me. Set on the violent streets of Mumbai, it tells the story of Jamal, a young boy who gets the chance to play the TV game show *Who Wants To Be A Millionaire*. He does well, but the show's host says he has been cheating. Jamal gets arrested, and begins to tell the police officer the story of his life on the streets. Simon Beaufoy's screenplay is a clever adaptation of the novel *Q&A* by Vikas Swarup, and Danny Boyle's creative direction provides surprising twists and turns. The picture of life on the streets is not a pleasant one, and the way the children are treated is upsetting. It is a powerful story, and the emotional ending made me cry, along with others in the cinema.

Glossary

labyrinth: a place with many paths, so that it is difficult to understand where you are

get arrested: to be taken to the police station by the police, because they think you've done something wrong

VOCABULARY Music, art and books

1 Fill the gaps with a word from the box.

albums composer singer concert
instruments

I go to a music college in northern Italy, and I play three ¹
I started playing the piano when I was five, and the guitar at eight.
Ennio Morricone is my favourite ², and I've got nearly all
his ³ I sometimes play music from the film 'The Mission'
on the piano. For the last four years, I've been learning the violin, and
I'm now in the college orchestra. We gave a ⁴ last month.
My girlfriend, Christina, is a ⁵, and she sang soprano. It
was a great success.

sculptures paintings landscape portrait
photographer exhibition

In my job as a ⁶, I meet lots of interesting people. I was
lucky enough to photograph the Hungarian sculptor, Laszlo, last year.
His bronze ⁷ of political figures are superb. I met him at
an ⁸ of his work in Madrid, and was impressed by the
range of styles. My favourite modern artist, however, is the
⁹ painter, Vitali Komarov. His ¹⁰ are full of the
rich countryside colours he sees around him.

novel authors comedy crime fiction poetry

At book club we choose a ¹¹ to read each month, and
then all discuss it. This month we're doing a ¹², but I
don't find it very funny, I'm afraid. I prefer ¹³, and one of
my favourite ¹⁴ is Ian Rankin. His books about Inspector
John Rebus are great, but unfortunately, not many of the other club
members want to read detective stories. Someone asked if we could
try ¹⁵ next, and suggested a long poem about a cat. I
don't think I'll be a member for long!

GRAMMAR Present perfect continuous

2 Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*.

- I've been playing the piano five years.
- He's been working on that project two months
now, and he still hasn't finished!
- You've been working on the computer six this
morning. Have a break!
- We've been going to Latin American dance classes
2004, and we're quite good at the tango now.
- I've been reading this book three weeks now.
- We've been waiting here hours!

Learner tip

Use the present perfect continuous when you are interested
in the action and how long it has been going on.
Use the present perfect simple to talk about the result of
that action until now, i.e. how much / how many.
e.g. *I've been writing emails all morning*: action and how
long
I've written ten so far: result of that action and how many?

3 Choose the correct form.

- She's *been acting* / *acted* for ten years, and has *been starring* /
starred in six films.
- He's *directed* / *been directing* several films, including *Love
Me Forever*, and for the last six months he has *worked* / *been
working* on a film in Africa.
- She *started* / *has started* painting in 1980, and *held* / *has held*
exhibitions in several countries since then.
- Mandy *is playing* / *has been playing* the drums since she was
eight and *is having* / *has had* her own drum set for three years.
- Laura's *known* / *knowing* Ian for two years, and they *are going* /
have been going out together for six months.
- The book has *been becoming* / *become* very popular, and has
been published / *being published* in 27 languages.

4 Complete the text with the present perfect continuous or the present perfect simple of the verbs in brackets.

Nobuya Sugawa is one of Japan's leading saxophonists. He
¹ (play) the saxophone since he was a young boy,
and ² (gain) admirers all over the world.
Sugawa studied at the Tokyo University of Fine Arts and Music. He
performs in around 100 concerts a year and ³ (record)
more than 20 CDs, including Takashi Yoshimatsu's Saxophone
Concerto Cyber-bird with the BBC Philharmonic, and Made In
Japan. He ⁴ (work) with most of Japan's major orchestras
and several leading international orchestras.
For the last few months, Sugawa ⁵ (tour) Europe, giving
masterclasses and concerts. He will be appearing at the Royal College,
London in November, and then at the Conservatory in Madrid.

DEVELOPING WRITING

Blog entry – a book review

- Carla reads a lot of online book reviews. The books blog of a
local newspaper has asked readers to choose their favourite
book of this year. Read Carla's entry below, and complete it
with the correct adjective form of the verbs in brackets (1–3).

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 13

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 13 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- I'm a band. I sing and play the guitar.
- Her films focus social issues.
- He wants to make people aware what's happening in his country.
- The books are aimed teenagers who are interested in science.
- The story is set a remote village in Scotland.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- Mozart is one of my favourite COMPOSE
- Her music is loved by people from different SOCIETY
- The plot was complicated, and the ending was PREDICT
- There was a loud and the lights went out. EXPLODE
- She's got the role in a play opening next week. LEAD
- James Cameron is the of the movie *Avatar*. DIRECT
- Many Hollywood actors are very WEALTH
- He's the of the local school orchestra. CONDUCT

3 Choose the correct word.

- They're busy *rehearsing* / *publishing* a new play at the Royal Court theatre.
- They're trying to *invade* / *promote* Bollywood by showing Indian movies on TV.
- He's taking part in the Arts *Festival* / *Exhibition* in Edinburgh this summer.
- She has a *talent* / *taste* for capturing human emotion in a photograph.
- I thought the film was rather *surprising* / *depressing*, and had a really negative attitude towards the issue.
- YouTube is a wonderful *source* / *element* of entertainment.

4 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 He never raises his | a for auction next month. |
| 2 The paintings will be put up | b downloading films. |
| 3 The band are busy recording | c of the homeless in Athens. |
| 4 He was fined for illegally | d effects in <i>Life of Pi</i> . |
| 5 I was impressed by the special | e voice when he's angry. |
| 6 The film looks at the issue | f their new album. |

Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again.
Compare your scores.

posted by Carla, 06 Dec:

MY BOOKSHELF

a I have chosen *The Secret Scripture* by Sebastian Barry as my favourite book of the year. I found it very ¹ (move) and read it in one day.

b The heroine, Roseanne, is nearly 100 years old, and has been living in a mental hospital for 60 years. Her psychiatrist, Dr Grene, is ² (interest) in her, and wants to learn about how she came to be there. The story is told through the journals of these two characters. Through Roseanne's memories, the writer allows us to gradually see pieces of the truth, and her story is a ³ (surprise) one.

c The story develops in a clever way and Sebastian Barry's beautiful prose touches the reader's heart. Definitely worth reading!

Glossary

prose: written language using normal sentences; not poetry

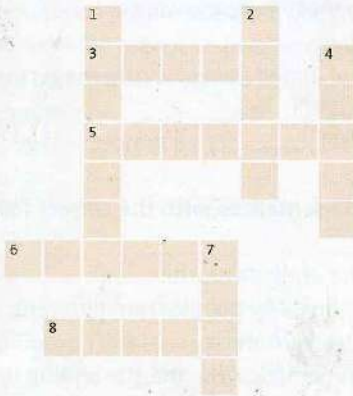
6 Match the headings (1–3) with the paragraphs in Carla's entry (a–c).

- opinion of the book
- name of my chosen book
- description of the plot

7 The underlined phrases in the text can be used to express your opinion about a book or a film. The phrase *beautiful prose* can become *wonderful screenplay* / *script* for a film. Write a similar blog entry for your own favourite book or film. Try to use some of the underlined phrases and descriptive adjectives to help you.

VOCABULARY Things in the house

- 1 Read the clues 1–8, and write the things in the house in the grid.

**Across**

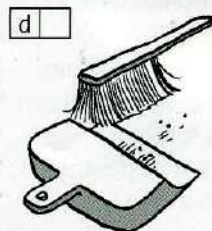
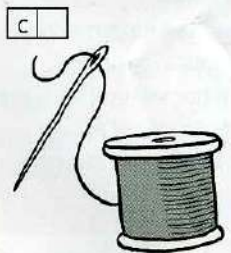
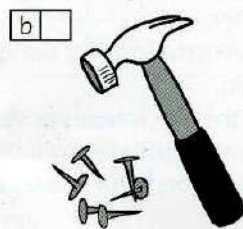
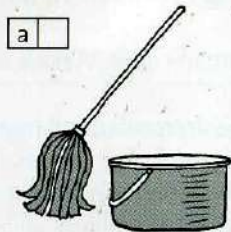
- 3 You dry yourself with this after a bath.
5 You put this on when you cut yourself.
6 You use a needle to repair clothes with this.
8 You use a hammer to bang these into a piece of wood.

Down

- 1 You use this to join pieces of paper together.
2 You wipe surfaces clean with this.
4 This helps you see in the dark.
7 You work here on your computer.

- 2 Fill the gaps in these words and match them to the pictures.

- 1 mop and b _ _ _ t. 3 dustpan and b _ _ h.
2 n _ _ _ e and thread. 4 h _ _ _ r and nails.

**DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS**

Explaining where things are

- 3 Complete these conversations with the phrases in the box.

Yes, there are some in the fridge.
Can I make a drink?
Have you got a needle and thread?
There's a first aid kit in the kitchen cupboard.
Have you got today's paper?
Where do you keep the plasters?
Yes, the coffee is on the shelf.
Have you got any snacks?
There's a sewing box on the shelf.
There's one on the bathroom wall.
Can I borrow a hairdryer?
It's on the table by the TV.

- 1 A: I'd like to wash my hair.
B:
2 A: I've just cut my finger.
B:
3 A: I'm feeling hungry.
B:
4 A: A button has come off my shirt.
B:
5 A: I'm thirsty.
B:
6 A: I'd like to check the sports news.
B:

- 4 Fill the gaps in these sentences with the prepositions in the box.

on under in in next in at on

- 1 You'll find a mop in the cupboard to the kitchen door.
2 There's a needle and thread the drawer.
3 There's a torch on the table the side of the bed.
4 You'll find some towels the shelf in the bathroom.
5 There's a rubbish bin the desk in the study.
6 You'll find a vacuum cleaner the corner of the garage.
7 There's a notebook the table.
8 There's a clean shirt the wardrobe.

GRAMMAR Relative clauses

- 5 Complete these sentences by joining them to a phrase in the box using *which*, *who* or *where*.

helps you to get dry	horse racing takes place
cleans carpets	you can watch the latest movies
hold water	prepares food in a restaurant
you can keep fit	make things from wood

- 1 A gym is a place
- 2 A chef is a person
- 3 A vacuum cleaner is a thing
- 4 Carpenters are people
- 5 A cinema is a building
- 6 A towel is a piece of cloth
- 7 A racecourse is an area
- 8 Buckets are containers

Language note

In relative clauses you will sometimes see *that* used instead of *who* or *which*. For example:

He's the man that drives the bus. = *He's the man who drives the bus.*

It's a machine that drills holes. = *It's a machine which drills holes.*

- 6 Choose the correct word in *italics* in these sentences.

- 1 She's the woman *which* / *who* sold me her car.
- 2 It's a place *where* / *which* you can go to be alone.
- 3 They're the people *who* / *when* saw the robbery.
- 4 It's the time of day *who* / *when* people relax after work.
- 5 Here comes the man *when* / *who* knows all the answers.
- 6 This is the room *which* / *where* we keep the records.
- 7 We're the people *which* / *who* are paying for the party.
- 8 This is the day *who* / *when* we remember the great successes of the past.

- 7 Complete the conversation with *who* or *which*.

- A: What's the name of that restaurant ¹ does Moqueca?
 B: I don't remember. And what's Moqueca!?
 A: It's a famous Brazilian dish ² is made of fish.
 B: Oh, now I remember. And all the people ³ work there are Brazilians, right?
 A: Yes, that's the place.
 B: It's the Carnicero.
 A: But a Carnicero is a person ⁴ prepares different cuts of meat! A butcher, in English. That's a funny name for a fish restaurant.
 B: It's not a fish restaurant. It's a place ⁵ serves everything.

LISTENING



- 8 14.1 Two cleaners are starting their day's work at a hotel. Listen to their conversation. Put a tick next to the four things that they have to do.

TO DO

Clean carpets in lobby	Wipe mirrors
Tidy reception area	Sweep front steps
Clean marble floor in dining room	Polish glasses in bar
	Put up picture

- 9 14.1 Listen again and make a list of the things they need to do each job.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4

- 10 Where can they find the things that they need? Match these places to the things you have listed above.

- 1 in the drawer in the staff room
- 2 in the cupboard behind the reception area
- 3 in the cellar
- 4 under the stairs

- 11 At the end of the conversation one of the cleaners can't find the right word. What is it?

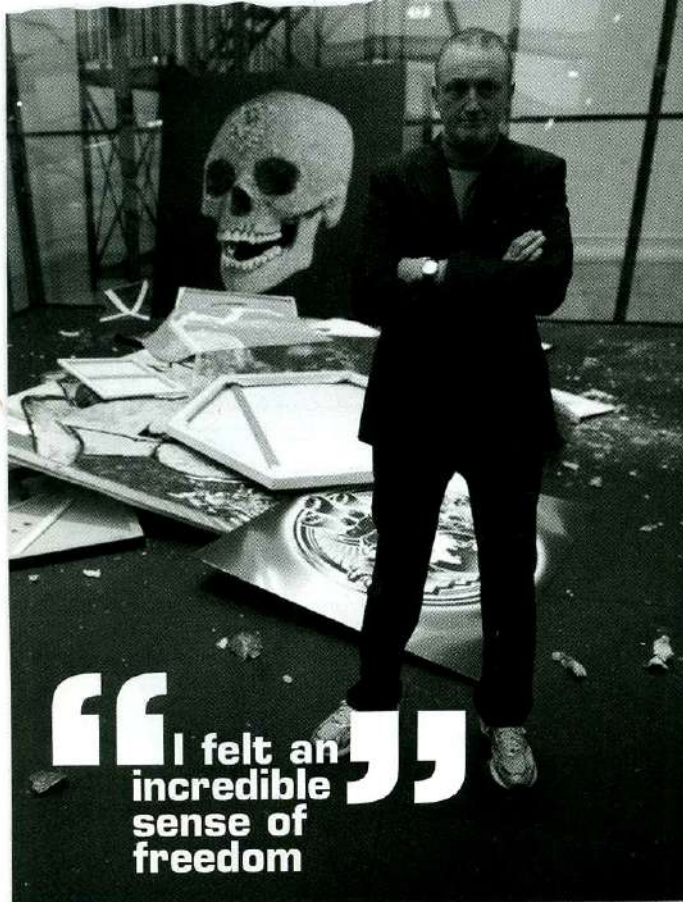
VOCABULARY Containers

1 Choose the word that does **not** collocate with the container.

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 a can of | cola / beer / shampoo |
| 2 a packet of | biscuits / bread / sweets |
| 3 a jar of | fish / honey / jam |
| 4 a carton of | milk / orange juice / butter |
| 5 a bar of | soap / cheese / chocolate |
| 6 a box of | sausages / cereal / tissues |
| 7 a pot of | yoghurt / crisps / tea |
| 8 a tin of | eggs / baked beans / tomatoes |

2 Match the words (1–6) to the clues (a–f).

- | | |
|-------------|-------|
| 1 metal | ..... |
| 2 glass | ..... |
| 3 plastic | ..... |
| 4 cardboard | ..... |
| 5 cloth | ..... |
| 6 paper | ..... |
- a this material is often made from wool or cotton
 b you can make many things from this material including bags and bottles and sheets.
 c a material which you can see through
 d this is made from layers of paper stuck together
 e iron and aluminium are examples of this material
 f this is made from wood or rags



“I felt an incredible sense of freedom”

READING

3 Quickly read the article. Which of these sentences is the best summary?

- a The article is about a man who destroyed his home and family life because he couldn't stop buying things.
 b It's about a man who destroyed everything he owned as a work of performance art.
 c It tells the story of a man who lost everything that he owned because of bad luck.
 d It's about a man who was always breaking things, including some very valuable objects.

THE MAN WHO DESTROYED EVERYTHING

In February 2001, the artist Michael Landy destroyed everything he owned. He rented an empty shop on London's busiest shopping street, Oxford Street. He took all his possessions there and with the help of ten assistants, started to make a list of everything – his car, his books, his works of art, his photographs, his clothes, his passport, his driving licence, his toothbrush – absolutely everything! When they had written all 7,227 items onto huge cards Landy and his assistants started the serious business. One by one, they placed Michael Landy's things onto a conveyor belt which took them to a machine that destroyed them.

Why did Landy do this? For him, it was a work of performance art, which he called *Break Down*, and he even invited the public to come along and watch. During the two weeks that it took to destroy all his possessions, 45,000 people visited the shop in Oxford Street. Landy believed that *Break Down* could make people think again about the consumer society that they live in and reflect on their shopping habits and possessions.

At the end of the process, Michael Landy was left with nothing except his cat. So how did he feel?

'I felt an incredible sense of freedom,' he said, 'the possibility that I could do anything.'

Since then, Michael Landy has become one of the most respected artists in the UK but he certainly took an unusual route to career success!

Glossary

conveyor belt: a moving strip which carries things from one place to another

performance art: a live work of art in which the artist plays a part

consumer society: a society in which shopping is very important

4 Read the article again and answer the following questions.

- 1 Where did the event happen?
.....
- 2 How many assistants did Michael Landy have?
.....
- 3 How many things did he own?
.....
- 4 What was the event called?
.....
- 5 What did he want people to think about?
.....
- 6 What one thing did he have at the end?
.....
- 7 How did he feel at the end of the event?
.....
- 8 What has happened to Michael Landy since 2001?
.....

5 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 Oxford Street is London's busiest shopping street.
.....
- 2 Michael Landy didn't own a car.
- 3 His things were destroyed by a conveyor belt.
- 4 Michael Landy didn't want publicity.
- 5 The event lasted two weeks.
- 6 He saved his works of art.

6 Fill the gaps in the conversation with these sentences.

We all have too many possessions these days.
I think he made a good point.
You're always going shopping.
It was so wasteful!
But he could have given them to charity.
Why do you think that?

A: I think Landy's *Break Down* was a stupid idea.

B: 1.....

A: He didn't need to destroy his things.

2.....

B: I disagree.

3.....

A: What point was he trying to make?

B: I think he was trying to say something about the consumer society.

4.....

A: 5.....

It would have been more useful. And I don't think I have too many possessions!

B: Yes you do!

6.....

GRAMMAR *must, mustn't*

7 Match the sentences with the same definitions.

- 1 There is a law that tells you to do this.
- 2 There is no law.
- 3 There is a law that tells you not to do this.
- a You mustn't do this.
- b You don't have to do this.
- c You must do this.

8 Complete this hotel information sheet with *You must*, *You mustn't* or *You don't have to*.

Information for Guests

- 1 return the keys to reception when you leave.
- 2 smoke in the children's play area.
- 3 Check out time is 11.00 am. leave your room before then on your last day.
- 4 use your mobile phones in the quiet room.
- 5 The coffee is free. pay for it.
- 6 If you want to check out late, tell reception the day before.
- 7 Towels are available at the swimming pool. bring your own.
- 8 You can use the sauna any time book in advance.
- 9 The swimming pool is very shallow. dive into it.
- 10 wear your swimming costume in the dining room.



GRAMMAR Verbs with two objects

1 Choose the correct word.

- 1 She bought the shirt *for* / *to* me.
- 2 He sent the parcel *for* / *to* them.
- 3 They brought the books *for* / *to* our house.
- 4 He cooked roast beef *for* / *to* her.
- 5 Can you lend your bike *for* / *to* me for the afternoon?
- 6 Will you give that plate *for* / *to* him?
- 7 Will you read the letter *for* / *to* us?
- 8 Can you pour some orange juice *for* / *to* her?

2 Change the order of the two objects in these sentences.

- 1 He gave the books to me.
He gave
- 2 I bought you a cup of coffee.
I bought
- 3 He poured a glass of milk for me.
He poured
- 4 I sent you a postcard.
I sent
- 5 She made a sandwich for me.
She made
- 6 He read them the report.
He read
- 7 They lent their car to us.
They lent
- 8 We cooked dinner for them.
We cooked

PRONUNCIATION

/g/ and /k/, /b/ and /p/

3 14.2 Say these pairs of words. Then listen and tick (✓) the word you hear.

- | | | | |
|---------|-------|-----------|---------|
| 1 glass | class | 6 good | could |
| 2 gave | cave | 7 ban | pan |
| 3 bin | pin | 8 bad | pad |
| 4 bear | pair | 9 goal | coal |
| 5 gold | cold | 10 boring | pouring |

LISTENING

4 14.3 Listen to the conversation. Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 Rachel has just returned from Scotland.
- 2 She brought back a present which is a bit like a handbag.
- 3 You wear it over your shoulder.
- 4 In Scotland the men wear them.
- 5 It has four tassels on the front.
- 6 It's called a kilt.

WRITING

5 Read this paragraph about haggis, a famous Scottish dish. In which order do you read these things? Number them 1 to 4.

- The writer's opinion of haggis
 The writer's recommendation
 A definition of haggis
 The writer's first experience of haggis

6 Write a description of one of these things. Use the notes to help you organise your writing.

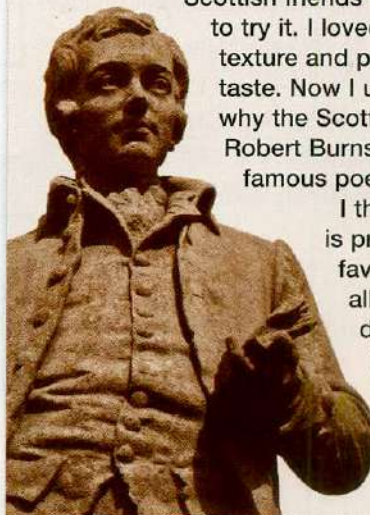
- Your favourite place
- Your favourite food
- A movie you've seen recently
- Your favourite piece of music
- Your favourite book.

Haggis is a huge surprise

The dictionary definition of haggis is 'a Scottish dish made from the organs of a sheep which are mixed with oatmeal and boiled and then served in the sheep's stomach'. It isn't a very attractive description - maybe it doesn't make you want to choose haggis from a menu. But that that definition doesn't give you a true idea of how delicious haggis really is. When I first tried haggis in Edinburgh two years ago, I didn't know what to expect, but my

Scottish friends told me to try it. I loved its rich texture and peppery taste. Now I understand why the Scottish poet Robert Burns wrote a famous poem to a haggis!

I think haggis is probably my favourite food of all time, although I don't think I could eat it every week. Don't take my word for it, though. You really have to try haggis for yourself!



The guide books say that ...
 The dictionary definition of X is ...
 The newspaper reviews say that ...
 Most people think that ...

But that does not give you a true idea of how amazing / delicious / special, etc. X really is.

When I first saw / heard / tried etc X, I thought ...
 (Describe your first experience of X)

I think that X is ... (Give your opinion of X)

But don't take my word for it, you really have to see / try / taste, etc. X for yourself.



Vocabulary Builder Quiz 14

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 14 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

sack spilt rid consumed clue shame

- We got of all our rubbish last weekend.
- I've no idea. Can you give me a ?
- Can you buy some bread, milk and a of potatoes?
- It's a they're moving! They're such good neighbours.
- Oh no! I've coffee all over my new shirt!
- We so much food last night! It's embarrassing!

2 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- A *shelf* is something that you put things like books on.
- A *sticker* is a small piece of material that you put over a cut on your skin.
- You use a *plaster* for boiling water.
- A *mortgage* is an amount of money you borrow to buy a house.
- A *site* is a place that we use for a particular purpose.
- You put stuff you want to keep in a *bin*.
- You can buy a *carton* of jam and a *jar* of milk.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- We made a big in spending last year. REDUCE
- I feel about all the rubbish I produce. GUILT
- Adverts try to persuade to buy more stuff all the time. CONSUME
- It was very hard to of all their rubbish. DISPOSAL
- The system was so she upgraded it. EFFICIENCY
- We need to increase the amount of that we do. RECYCLE

4 Choose the word that does not form a collocation with the key word.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------|
| 1 rubbish / waste paper / clue | bin |
| 2 petrol / kitchen / desk | drawer |
| 3 excellent / exhausted / poor | record |
| 4 gold / coal / soap | mine |
| 5 biscuit / jam / cake | tin |
| 6 plaster / door / wooden | handle |

Score ____ /25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again.
 Compare your scores.

15

MONEY

VOCABULARY The economy and quality of life

- 1 Find the words and phrases from the list below hidden in the box. The missing words read up ↑, down ↓, to the left ← or to the right →.

C	O	T	D	E	R	U	K	A	E	W	N	P	U
X	Y	O	O	A	O	N	I	D	Q	W	X	Y	L
W	C	L	C	B	T	E	S	C	E	T	N	T	E
T	N	L	X	T	I	M	E	O	F	F	P	I	V
A	E	U	I	Y	N	P	K	S	A	L	A	R	Y
S	R	E	N	A	W	L	Z	T	M	H	J	U	T
Z	R	T	F	I	Q	O	V	O	I	C	E	C	R
Q	U	A	L	I	T	Y	O	F	L	I	F	E	O
S	C	M	A	K	L	M	B	L	Y	A	R	S	P
T	R	I	T	E	U	E	M	I	R	C	H	B	S
Y	P	L	I	C	I	N	Z	V	Q	D	U	O	N
P	W	C	O	I	W	T	P	I	Y	F	G	J	A
U	L	O	N	S	T	R	O	N	G	G	O	W	R
Q	I	M	A	V	E	R	A	G	E	R	S	A	T

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1 average | 6 family | 11 strong |
| 2 climate | 7 inflation | 12 time off |
| 3 cost of living | 8 job security | 13 transport |
| 4 crime | 9 quality of life | 14 unemployment |
| 5 currency | 10 salary | 15 weak |

- 2 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences.

- One of the biggest problems at the moment is *unemployment* / *inflation*. Many skilled people are out of work.
- The *pace of life* / *cost of living* is quite fast in this city, and a lot of people suffer from stress.
- While the economy is doing badly, most people are interested in having *job security* / *a high salary*.
- More and more people are moving out of the city to find a better *average salary* / *quality of life*.
- People are becoming more and more worried about *climate change* / *crime* as temperatures rise and there is less rain than in the past.
- Our currency is *weak* / *strong* at the moment, so it's not a good time to travel abroad.
- The rate of *inflation* / *crime* is rising at the moment, and the cost of living is high.
- Although Gina has a good *currency* / *salary*, she doesn't have much job security.

LISTENING

You're going to listen to Carlos and Yelena speaking. Carlos is a native Argentinian, and Yelena is from the Czech Republic.

- 3 15.1 Listen and answer the questions.

- Does Yelena like living in Argentina?
.....
- Is the economy doing well?
.....
- Why does she want to leave?
.....

- 4 15.1 Listen again and complete the sentences with one word.

- According to Carlos, the cost of living in Prague is than it is in Argentina.
- Yelena says that unemployment is in Prague than it is in Argentina.
- According to Yelena, houses are in the Czech Republic.
- Carlos says that eating out is less in Argentina.
- Yelena says that salaries are in the Czech Republic.
- Yelena thinks it is important for Miguel and her to decide where they will both feel to live.

- 5 Tick (✓) the arguments Yelena gives to support her decision to move to Prague.

- It is important for Miguel to understand her culture and language.
- Prague is a better place to bring up children.
- They will find a better paid job easily.
- Cars are cheaper in the Czech Republic.
- She doesn't have a good quality of life in Argentina.
- They need to live in both countries to decide where to raise a family.



GRAMMAR Time phrases and tense

6 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| 1 House prices are currently | ..... |
| 2 Unemployment has fallen | ..... |
| 3 According to the government, the economy will | ..... |
| 4 The cost of living has gone up over | ..... |
| 5 Rents used to be a lot cheaper | ..... |
| 6 The government is going to announce | ..... |
| 7 According to newspaper reports, inflation is falling | ..... |
| 8 The pace of life used to be much | ..... |

- a improve over the next few months.
 b the last two years.
 c slower when I was a child.
 d at the moment.
 e rising and many people can't afford to buy their own home.
 f since this time last year.
 g when I was a student.
 h the new budget in two weeks' time.

7 Put the words in the sentences into the correct order.

- 1 used to / on education / the government / spend more

 2 a new shopping centre / yesterday / they opened / on the ring road

 3 she's going to / next week / in advertising / a new job / start

 4 three jobs / he's had / in the last two years

 5 improving / at the moment / the economy is

 6 in the last five years / three loans / she's had / from the bank

8 The tense is wrong in the sentences below. Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Unemployment used to rise over the last few months.

 2 The average salary has been higher when I was at school.

 3 Inflation will fall since last year.

 4 The price of petrol has risen again in the next few weeks.

 5 The cost of living used to fall at the moment, and prices are lower.

 6 I think the economy has improved next year.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Comparing prices

- 9 Below are lists of average prices for certain items in two countries, Celtonia and Faroland. Compare the prices and complete the sentences about them. Use phrases such as *more / less expensive than, cheaper than, much cheaper than, etc.*

	Celtonia	Faroland
three-bedroom house	€200,000	€300,000
four-door saloon car	€20,000	€25,000
petrol	€1 per litre	€1.20 per litre
computer (PC)	€750	€1000
iPod	€200	€200

- 1 Houses are
 to buy in Celtonia than in Faroland.
 2 In Celtonia petrol is in Faroland.
 3 Cars are
 in Faroland than they are in Celtonia.
 4 Computers are in Celtonia.
 5 An iPod, however, costs
 in Celtonia as in Faroland.
 6 Generally, the cost of living in Celtonia seems to be
 it is in Faroland.

10 Complete the replies to the following statements with an example from the lists in exercise 9.

- A: Clothes are cheaper in Faroland than in Celtonia.
 B: I know. You can buy designer jeans for €60, whereas they cost €70 in Celtonia.

- 1 A: Houses are much cheaper in Celtonia.
 B: I know. You can buy a three-bedroomed house for €200,000 there, whereas
 2 A: Cars are more expensive in Faroland.
 B: I know. A four-door saloon costs €25,000 in Faroland, whereas
 3 A: However, petrol is only slightly more expensive in Faroland.
 B: I know. It costs €1.20 there,
 4 A: If you want a new computer, you should go to Celtonia. They're much cheaper there.
 B: I know. They cost only €750 in Celtonia,

READING

1 Read the newspaper article about Professor Muhammad Yunus and complete the sentences.

- Professor Yunus used to work as
- In 1983, he formed
- In 2006, Professor Yunus was awarded

2 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- Professor Yunus was a university student in 1974.
- Professor Yunus was upset by the famine in Bangladesh.
- The woman's story showed him how traders took advantage of the poor.
- Professor Yunus helped the woman and other workers by offering them a loan.
- He did not expect them to pay back the money.
- Everyone paid back the money they had borrowed.
- In 1983, Professor Yunus started a bank to help poor people.
- The bank is not very successful.

3 Complete the sentences with a word or phrase from the box.

loan	micro-credit	borrowed
lend	interest	pay back

- People usually pay a lot of on a business loan, and it often takes them a long time to pay back the money.
- Riko, can you me £50? I haven't got enough money to pay the bill.
- Several banks are setting up systems for small businesses to help the economy improve.
- Hi, Camille! Look, I'm sorry for the delay. I'll the money I owe you at the end of the week, OK?
- I'm fed up! Ming £100 from me three months ago, and he still hasn't paid it back!
- Right, David! Here's £1,000 towards your car. Remember it's a, so I expect to be paid back!

Nobel Prize Winner receives Medal of Freedom

Professor Muhammad Yunus has many reasons to be proud. He was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 2006, and has just been presented with the Medal of Freedom by United States President, Barack Obama.

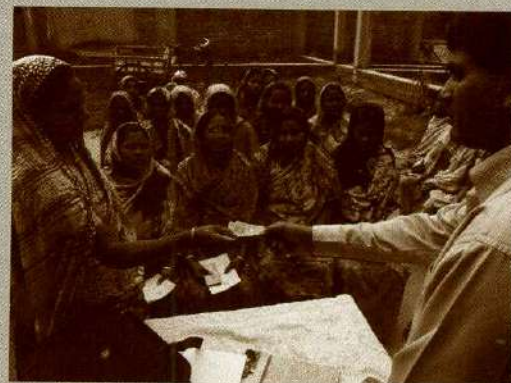


When famine hit Bangladesh in 1974, Professor Yunus was teaching Economics at Chittagong University. He was deeply shocked by the number of people dying in the streets, and wanted to do something to help.

He mixed with villagers, learning about their lives and their problems. One woman made bamboo stools. She was skilled and hardworking, but did not have the money to buy the bamboo. She was forced to borrow from a trader who then paid a low price for the stools, which he would then sell for a good profit. The woman's profit was just a penny a day! Professor Yunus discovered that this was true for many villagers. Together with one of his students, he made a list of 42 people who worked like this woman. He decided to lend them the total amount they needed to become independent in their work – about £1 per person – and told them it was a loan, but without interest. The Professor then persuaded a bank to provide such loans, with him as guarantor. The bank was not enthusiastic, but the system worked, and all the loans were paid back.

Professor Yunus realised that a new bank was needed; a bank that was owned by the people. In October 1983, the Grameen (Village) Bank was formed. Over the next few years, it made small loans to some of the poorest people in Bangladesh, so that they could become self-employed and escape poverty. It was a huge success. Since then, the bank has grown so much that it now has almost 8 million members, and 96% of them are women. Grameen's system of micro-credit is one of the most successful banking systems in the world, with 98% of all loans paid back in full.

Professor Yunus has given the people of Bangladesh hope and a sense of pride.



Glossary

famine: period when large numbers of people have little or no food and they die

stool: a seat with legs but no support for the back

guarantor: person who promises to make sure a loan is paid back

Learner tip

Think about what you can understand, not about what you find difficult!

When you read an article or story in English, write down something interesting you noticed or learnt from what you read. This will help you to see how much you understood, and give you confidence to read more!

VOCABULARY Money verbs**4 Choose the best word in *italics* to complete the sentences.**

Ming Woo had no money, and he ¹ *left* / *owed* €5,000 to the bank. He ² *borrowed* / *lent* €5 from his brother and bought a lottery ticket. Fortunately, he ³ *won* / *saved* €10,000! Ming paid the money to the bank, and ⁴ *left* / *gave* his brother €1,000. Then he bought a second-hand car for €3,000. That ⁵ *left* / *saved* him with €1,000. He decided to ⁶ *lend* / *save* it, and put it in the bank. Ming Wu is more careful with his money now. He is worried that he might ⁷ *drop* / *lose* his job. He saves €100 every month. But he still ⁸ *plays* / *spends* the lottery every week!

5 Complete the sentences with the most suitable word(s) from the box.

credit card	attention	bill	interest
to do it	paid	back	

- Sinead didn't have much cash, so she paid for the meal by
- Ameet spent too much money last month and couldn't afford to pay the electricity
- Can I borrow €50? I promise I'll pay you!
- Our TV needed repairing and we paid the technician €65
- The sales manager talked for an hour at the meeting, but few people paid much
- Oh, no! I've spent all my wages and I'll have to wait another two weeks until I get
- I don't want to ask the bank for a loan, as I'll have to pay a lot of

LISTENING**6 15.2 Listen to two people talking, and answer the questions.**

- What is Isabel doing?
- Does she say it is easy or difficult?
- Does Primo like the idea?

7 15.2 Listen again. Choose the most suitable answer.

- Isabel is
 - writing out a cheque.
 - paying bills through the Internet.
 - writing an email.
- How does Primo feel about what she is doing?
 - Surprised.
 - Uninterested.
 - Enthusiastic.
- Isabel says this system
 - saves you money.
 - is complicated.
 - is good for the environment.
- Primo worries about
 - security.
 - expense.
 - wasting time.
- Isabel agrees that
 - it's expensive.
 - it is difficult.
 - there are some risks.
- When he goes to pay bills in Scotland, Primo sometimes finds it difficult to
 - work out the money.
 - remember his ID number.
 - understand the cashier's accent.
- Isabel says her way
 - wastes money.
 - is slower.
 - saves time.
- Finally, Primo
 - thinks it's a good idea.
 - doesn't like the idea.
 - is uncertain.

PRONUNCIATION**8 Say the words. Choose the word in each group that does not belong.**

/aɪ/	price	online	bill	buy	twice
/əʊ/	loan	grow	owe	owl	own
/aʊ/	amount	through	pound	round	sound
/eɪ/	save	paid	said	sales	wage

9 15.3 Listen to the sentences, and practise saying them.

Stress the words in bold.

- Buy** a house when the **price** is **right**, and pay your bills online.
- Take out a **loan** to buy your **own home**, then **owe** the bank money until you **grow old**.
- Twenty-five **pounds** for a meal may not **sound** much but is a large **amount** for a pizza.
- I got **paid** a good **wage** for my job in **sales**, and was able to **save** for a holiday in **Wales**.

GRAMMAR Time clauses

1 Six of these sentences contain mistakes. Find and correct them.

- I'll pay back the money I owe you *as soon as* I'll be able to.
- Call me *after* you'll transfer the money. OK?
- I lend you the money *until* you get paid.
- I'm going to talk to the manager *as soon as* he arrives at the bank.
- When I find a job, I open a savings account.
- I'm going to invest in Dave's company *after* I retire.
- As soon as I'll get confirmation of payment, I'll let you know.
- When I'll have enough money, I'll buy a new car.

2 Choose the correct word in *italics* to complete the sentences.

- I'll leave home *when / until* I finish college.
- Oliver is going to pay me back *before / as soon as* he comes home.
- Don't buy a flat *after / until* you're sure where you're going to live.
- I'm going to see what different banks offer *before / after* I take out a mortgage.
- You'll be able to pay bills online *until / after* you register.
- Don't forget to pay the bill *as soon as / until* it arrives.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- We (cancel) your credit card as soon as we get home.
- Don't buy that laptop until you (have) enough money to pay for it.
- Inflation (not fall) until the government takes action.
- When the economy (recover) unemployment will fall.
- I (not invest) any money until the price of shares (fall).
- As soon as I (win) the lottery, I (take) you to Hawaii.
- Before you (take out) a bank loan, always (check) how much interest you will have to pay.
- After I (finish) university, I (come) to work for you.

VOCABULARY Dealing with banks



4 Complete the sentences with one of the verbs in the box.

change make charge transfer pay cancel open take out

- Farouq and Heba want to buy their first house, and so they are going to a mortgage.
- I'm afraid my credit card has been stolen, so I need to it.
- Yes, my husband and I would like to a joint account, please.
- The banks are planning to us £2.40 every time we take cash from a cash machine!
- Yes, I'd like to a complaint. You've overcharged me for this meal.
- I want to some money into my account, please.
- Could you €1,000 from my account to Ms Yoko Wong in Tokyo, please? Just a moment and I'll give you her account number.
- Just a moment, Vikram! I haven't got any euros! I need to some money.

5 Look at the situations and write what you will do.

e.g. You are travelling to the USA, but you haven't got any dollars.

I will change some money.

- You want to send some money to your brother, who lives in Prague.
.....
- Your parents have sent you some money for your birthday. You take it to the bank.....
- Someone asks you to translate an article. You want to be paid for this.
.....
- You want to buy a flat, but need to borrow some money from the bank.
.....
- You've just started your first job and want to put your money in a bank.
.....
- You think someone has stolen your credit card details.
.....

Language note

Some verbs can go with more than one noun to form collocations. e.g. *take out* ~ a loan; ~ a mortgage; ~ some money
When you see a verb + noun collocation, use your dictionary to see if the verb can form other collocations, and make a list.

DEVELOPING WRITING

Email – giving information and advice

Sanjida is going to be a foreign exchange student at Edinburgh University. She has written to the university asking about the cost of living for students there. Below is the reply from the International Office.

- 6 Read the reply, and fill the gaps with one of the following words and phrases.

cost spend pay expenses cost of living charges

From: info@internat.office.ed.uk
To: Sanjida Beiz
Subject: re: cost of living in Edinburgh

Dear Sanjida,

1) You asked about the in Edinburgh. Edinburgh is quite an expensive city, so as a student here, you'll need to budget carefully.

2) You will £170 per week to stay in a university hall of residence. This includes the of electricity, hot water, Internet access and your breakfast. The university canteen students £13 a week for lunches. Then you will need to think about social , such as a cinema tickets, haircuts, clothes, drinks and so on. So, you can expect to at least £210–220 per week.

3) We look forward to welcoming you here. Don't hesitate to write again if you have any more questions.

Best wishes,
Gavin Stewart

- 7 What do the following amounts refer to?

£170:
£13:
£210–220:

- 8 Place the paragraph headings in the correct order.

- a) information and advice
b) closing statement and offer of extra help
c) reason for writing

- 9 Paco is a foreign exchange student who is coming to study in your city. He is going to stay in your house. He has written an email asking you for information about the social life. Read the notes you have made below. Then write Paco an email with some information. Use paragraphs like the model above.

college student centre - films, parties, discount prices at bar
local cinema / theatre - student prices
art gallery - free
sports facilities - some are expensive
eating out - expensive!

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 15

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 15 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

- 1 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 Inflation is an increase in prices.
2 Goods are things that are bought and sold.
3 A bill is a card with numbers or pictures on it.
4 An election is when people in a country vote to choose a new government.
5 The minimum is the largest amount possible.

- 2 Correct the error in the collocations.

- 1 It's an old motorbike so it doesn't worth much.
2 Our insurance concerns fire and flooding.
3 It cost us €10,000 to repair the harm to the house.
4 In times of recession, people want more job safety.
5 She decided to buy shame in the company.

- 3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 My father took out a will / loan to build his factory.
2 The President's population / popularity has decreased.
3 We discovered he earned / owed 35,000€ to the bank.
4 Our salary / currency is strong now, so it's a good time to go abroad.
5 He left all his money to a children's charity / company.

- 4 Match the sentence halves.

- 1 The second-hand car was in
2 It will take the economy a long time to recover
3 Luciano took out a
4 The government has promised to invest
5 The bank charges an interest
a rate of 8%.
b more money in schools.
c immaculate condition.
d loan to pay for his car.
e from the recession.

- 5 Complete the phrasal verbs.

- 1 The cost of living has gone again, and it's becoming difficult to afford the basics.
2 I'm cold! Can you turn the air conditioning?
3 You're driving too fast! Please slow
4 Samir was too shy to ask Marianna
5 She turned old dresses skirts to save money.

Score ____/25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again.
Compare your scores

16

EVENTS

VOCABULARY Describing parties and events

1 Fill the gaps in these sentences with the words in the box.

leaving	launch	housewarming
surprise	reception	dinner

- To celebrate a marriage, there is often a wedding
- When a new book or product is introduced there is sometimes a party.
- If you don't know a party is going to happen, it's a party
- A party happens when someone moves to a new job.
- When people move to a new house or flat they sometimes have a party.
- If you have friends round to your house to eat in the evening, it's a party.

2 Match the sentence halves.

- There wasn't much food, just a few bowls
- I couldn't hear anyone because the background
- The party was held in a converted
- The DJ played such bad music that he cleared
- They met each other at a birthday
- They had a terrible argument and
- I wasn't very hungry and just picked
- The buffet was amazing and everyone

- party last year.
- ruined the whole evening.
- of olives and nuts.
- helped themselves to as much as they wanted.
- warehouse near the river.
- at a few crisps.
- the dance floor in five minutes.
- music was much too loud.



3 Choose the word or phrase in *italics* which does not complete the answer.

- A: So where did you go last night?
B: I was at a *leaving* / *launch* / *host* / *dinner* party.
- A: What were the other guests like?
B: They were all very *easy to talk to* / *comfortable and convenient* / *warm and friendly* / *cold and distant*.
- A: Did you like the venue?
B: Oh, yes. It was *impressive* / *amazing* / *backward* / *elegant*.
- A: What kind of food did they have?
B: It was mostly *spicy* / *grilled* / *general* / *cold*.
- A: What was the wedding like?
B: Well, it was very *modern* / *traditional* / *formal* / *full*.
- A: Where did they hold the event?
B: It was on the *past* / *ground* / *top* / *dance* floor.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Linked questions

4 Fill the gaps in the conversation with these questions.

Was anyone I know there?	And what was the venue like?
Did you have a good time?	Was there anything to eat?
Or did you hang out with your friends?	What time did you leave?
Is he the person you went to school with?	What's he like?

- A: How was the party last night? ¹
- B: Yes, it was pretty good actually.
- A: ² Did you stay really late?
- B: No. It was probably about midnight.
- A: ³ Was it a nightclub?
- B: Yes, it was that new place in the middle of town, near the river. Do you know it?
- A: I know the one you mean, but I've never been inside. So what about the food? ⁴
- B: Not really. Most of it had gone by the time I arrived.
- A: Oh, that's a shame. So did you meet any new people? ⁵
- B: With friends mostly.
- A: Who was there? ⁶
- B: Yes, Peter was there. Do you remember him?
- A: Have I met him? ⁷
- B: That's him, yes. Anyway, he introduced me to a friend of his, who was rather nice.
- A: Really? ⁸ Are you going to see him again?
- B: Well, it's a long story ...

LISTENING



5 16.1 Listen to the conversation. Tick (✓) the best description.

- a Two people discussing a party the night before.
- b Someone complaining to a friend about her neighbour's noisy party.
- c Two people planning a surprise party for a friend.
- d Someone talking about a party with a professional party planner.

6 16.1 Listen to the conversation again and correct the mistakes in these notes.

Kind of party	18th birthday
Atmosphere	Fun and noisy
Venue	Nightclub in shopping mall
Food	Hot buffet
Music	Live band
End time	1.00-2.00 am

7 Fill the gaps in these questions with the phrases in the box. Then listen again to check.

would you like sort of venue	what kind of have you got	what time can you think are you going to
---------------------------------	------------------------------	---

- 1 party is it going to be?
- 2 What do you want?
- 3 any suggestions?
- 4 of anywhere else?
- 5 And serve any food?
- 6 What kind of music ?
- 7 would you like the party to finish?

PRONUNCIATION

8 16.2 Listen to these three extracts from the listening activity. Mark where the intonation rises or falls at the ends of the sentences.

- 1 A: With lots of people? ↗
B: Oh, yes, at least a hundred.
- 2 A: How about a cold buffet?
B: Yeah, a cold buffet's good.
- 3 A: Shall we say three to four in the morning?
B: Yeah, that's great.

9 16.3 Will these sentences have rising or falling intonation? Mark them with rising or falling arrows, then listen and check.

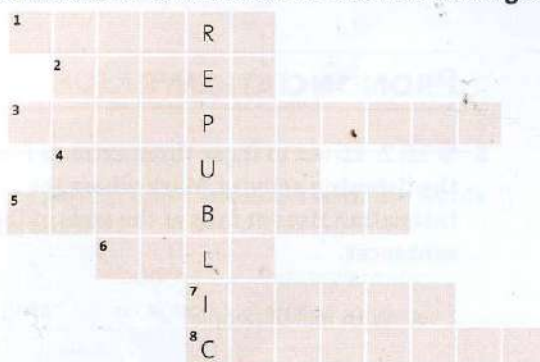
- 1 Where did you go last night?
- 2 Did you see what she was wearing?
- 3 Why were you so rude to him?
- 4 Have you been here before?
- 5 How many people here do you know?
- 6 Are you going to eat something?
- 7 Who's that man in the sunglasses near the bar?
- 8 Do you have the time?

Language note

Rising intonation means that the pitch increases and is often used in Yes / No questions. Falling intonation means that it decreases and is often used in *wh-?* questions. Intonation is often marked with an arrow pointing up ↗ or down ↘.

VOCABULARY Historical events

1 Read the clues 1–8 and write the answers in the grid.



- 1 In the nineteenth century, the British ... included India, Canada and Australia.
- 2 A king or government ... a country; they run and control it.
- 3 A country that is not controlled by another country is
- 4 When a foreign power enters and then controls a country, they ... it.
- 5 When you start something that you hope will last a long time, you ... it.
- 6 When you make someone die, you ... them.
- 7 When a foreign power enters a country in order to control it, they ... it.
- 8 When groups of people within a country fight against each other, there is a

2 Choose the correct word in *italics* in these sentences.

- 1 India became *independent* / *invaded* from the UK in 1947.
- 2 The city of New York was *occupied* / *established* by the Dutch in 1614.
- 3 The Ottoman *Empire* / *Republic* controlled the lands around the Mediterranean for six centuries.
- 4 Greece was *occupied* / *established* by the Axis powers in the second world war.
- 5 The first French *Empire* / *Republic* was founded on 22nd September, 1792.
- 6 The Italian army first *invaded* / *ruled* Greece in 1940, but did not gain control until the following year.

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

ruled killed Civil Union king lasted

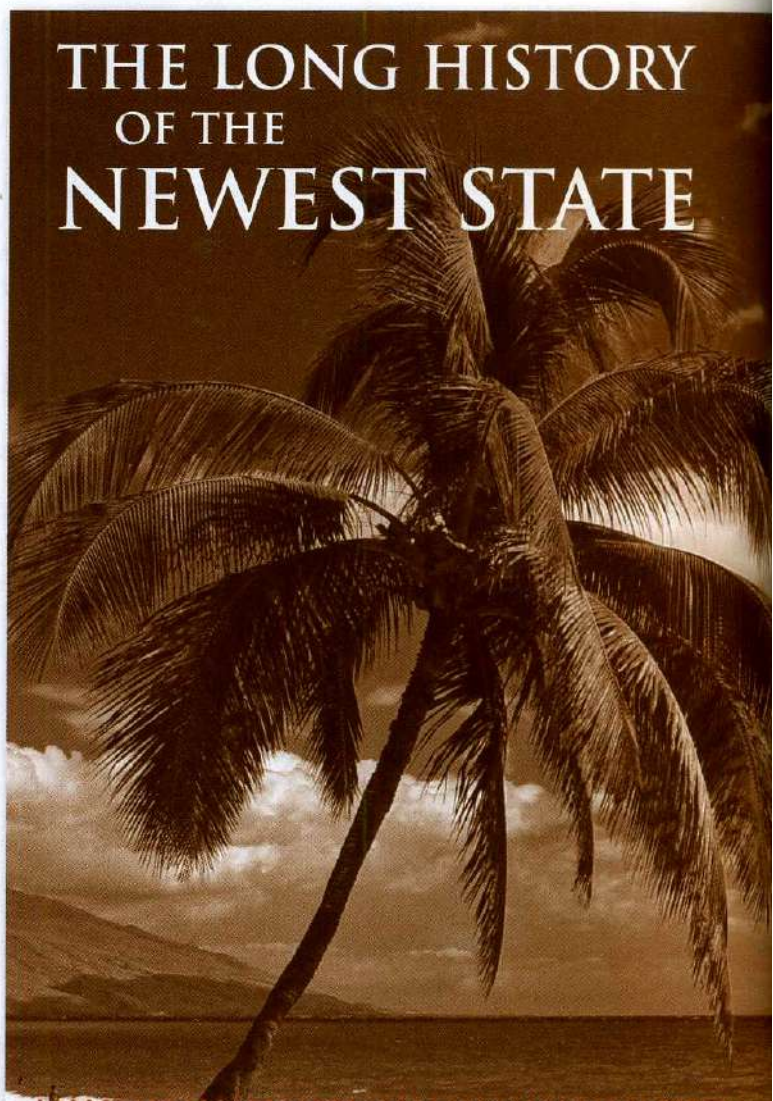
- 1 The North and South of the USA fought each other in the American War.
- 2 Finland became a member of the European in 1995.
- 3 The French Revolution for ten years.
- 4 Queen Victoria the British Empire for 64 years.
- 5 Felipe VI became of Spain in 2014.
- 6 Henry VIII's wife Anne Boleyn became Queen in 1533, and was three years later.

READING

4 This is an extract from a history of a state in the USA. Quickly read the text. Tick (✓) the state that it describes.

- a California
- b Florida
- c Hawaii
- d Texas

THE LONG HISTORY OF THE NEWEST STATE



Glossary

settlers: people who move to live in a new area of the world
missionaries: people who try to persuade others to become Christians

territory: in the USA, an area controlled by the government that is not a state

naval base: a place where navy (fighting) ships are kept

5 Read the extract again and complete this timeline.

500	<i>The first settlers arrived.</i>
1778	.....
1779	.....
1805	.....
1820	.....
1893	.....
1898	.....
1941	.....
1959	.....
1961	.....

This American state is famous for its beautiful beaches and volcanoes and, of course, was also the childhood home of US President Barack Obama who was born here in 1961. But the newest state in the union (it became the 50th state in 1959) has a long and fascinating history.

The first settlers arrived on the islands around AD 500 but little is known about them until 1778, when the British explorer Captain James Cook stayed here on his way to Australia. At first the people of the islands were generous to him and may have thought he was a representative of their god. But when he returned a year later, Cook argued with the local rulers and was killed.



At the end of the 18th century, the rulers of the islands were continually fighting each other for power, but in 1805 Kamehameha I became the islands' first king and established a monarchy which ruled successfully for many years.

The fate of Cook did not discourage other Westerners. In 1820 the first Christian missionaries arrived and before long European and American sailors and traders were a familiar sight in the streets of the islands' main ports such as Honolulu. However, as Western influence grew during the 19th century, the monarchy became weaker. In 1893 a group of American businessmen seized power in a revolution. Five years later, the islands were made a territory of the USA.

Under American rule, the economy continued to grow during the 20th century and Pearl Harbor became one of the USA's most important naval bases. It was here that the Japanese launched their surprise attack in December 1941 which brought the USA into the Second World War.

GRAMMAR Articles

6 Choose the correct answer *the / a / an / -* to complete the sentences.

- After winning *the / an* last election, *the / -* President Obama introduced a series of reforms.
- The / A* Prime Minister has promised to reduce *the / -* income tax.
- The / -* Buckingham Palace is *a / the* most famous of *the / -* Britain's palaces.
- A / The* country like *the / -* France or *the / -* USA which does not have *a / the* king or queen is called *a / -* republic.
- The / -* British women gained *the / a* vote for *the / a* first time in 1918.
- The / A* majority of *the / -* population are against *the / a* new law.
- The / -* India was ruled by *the / -* British until *the / -* 1947.
- We're having *a / the* party to celebrate *the / -* moving to *a / -* new home.

7 Delete the unnecessary articles in the following sentences. There may be more than one in each sentence.

- There was a major scandal involving the President which led to the civil war.
- The war led to thousands of the people becoming the refugees.
- The discovery of the oil resulted in lots of oil companies buying the land.
- The settlers depended on the farming to live.
- This raised the issue of the unfair taxation laws in the country.
- Britain and France went to a war against the Germany on 3rd. September, 1939.
- The earthquake off the Japanese coast in the 2011 caused a tsunami which left more than the 28,000 people dead or missing.
- Tsar Nicholas II ruled over a huge empire until 1917, when he fell from the power.
- Florence Nightingale became a nurse in 1853, and went to care for the soldiers in the Crimean war in 1854.
- She became known as 'The Lady of the Lamp', and one of her biggest fans was the Queen Victoria.

8 Complete the text below with *a, an, the* or *-*.

In ¹ 18th century, ² British East India Company controlled all tea trading between ³ India and ⁴ British colonies. ⁵ British government had created ⁶ tea tax, so ⁷ American colony refused to buy ⁸ British tea. On December 16th, 1773, three British ships were moored in ⁹ Boston harbour. ¹⁰ group of men calling themselves 'The Sons of Liberty' climbed onto ¹¹ ships and threw forty-five tonnes of tea into ¹² sea. This event became known as ¹³ Boston Tea Party and eventually led to ¹⁴ American War of Independence.

DEVELOPING WRITING

1 Read the text and put these events into the right order.

- The Normans sailed across the English Channel.
 William was crowned king.
 King Harold was killed.
 The Normans established a camp.
 The Normans and the English fought a battle.
 William marched to London.

2 Look at the text again.

- 1 Why is the date 1066 important?

- 2 What is the connection between William and modern Britain?

- 3 Underline these words in the text: *First, Next, Meanwhile, After*

- 4 Which word means 'at the same time as'?

3 Write a paragraph about an important event in the history of your country.

- Write a sentence to introduce the subject
- Include at least three steps in the story. Link them together with expressions such as *First, Next, Meanwhile* and *After*.
- Finish with a concluding sentence.

LISTENING

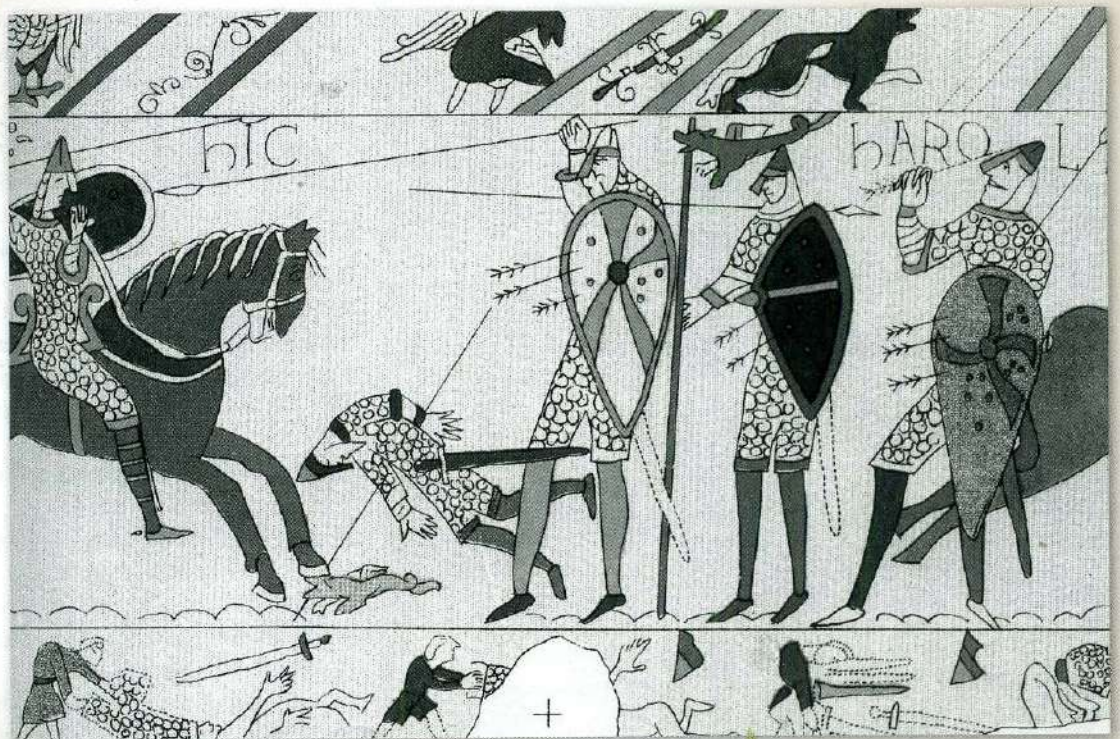
4 16.4 Listen to a tour guide talking about the Bayeux Tapestry. Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 The Bayeux Tapestry shows the events leading to the Norman invasion of England.
- 2 The Normans walked to England.
- 3 The tapestry shows the Battle of Hastings.
- 4 The tapestry doesn't show the death of King Harold.
- 5 The tapestry was made in 1070.
- 6 Queen Matilda was King Harold's wife.
- 7 The tapestry was definitely made by King William's brother.
- 8 There is a copy of the tapestry in Reading, England.

The Norman Conquest

In the UK, every schoolchild knows the date 1066. That was the year of the Norman invasion of England, which changed British history forever. William, Duke of Normandy, left France with his army in September of that year.

First, the Normans crossed the English Channel, landing at Pevensey Bay on the south coast of England. Next, William established a camp near the town of Hastings. Meanwhile, the new English king, Harold Godwinson, was marching towards Hastings with his army.



The two armies met on 14 October and fought a fierce battle in which Harold was killed. After the battle, William marched north to London where he was crowned king on Christmas Day.

William the Conqueror became the first in a long line of British kings and queens which includes the current monarch, Elizabeth II.

GRAMMAR Verb patterns (-ing or infinitive with to)

5 In each pair, match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 I forgot
I remember | telling her to go home early.
to post the letter. |
| 2 He spent two weeks
She decided | doing nothing.
to review all the work. |
| 3 They hated
They persuaded us | to play tennis.
going to the theatre. |
| 4 I'd like
I don't feel like | watching TV this evening.
to help my parents with their business. |
| 5 She enjoyed
She asked me | to help with her assignment.
taking her brother to school. |
| 6 Her new boss offered
The new job stopped | to help her sort out the accounts.
her spending so much time at home. |

6 Use the prompts to write answers to the questions.

- 1 A: Do you always drive to work?
B: Yes. I / hate / take the bus.
- 2 A: Do you still smoke?
B: No. I / stop / smoke / last year
- 3 A: What are you doing for your holiday next year?
B: I'd like / go / Hawaii
- 4 A: Do you want to come to the cinema this evening?
B: No, thanks. I / feel like / watch TV at home
- 5 A: Why doesn't your phone work any more?
B: Because / I forget / pay my bill
- 6 A: What was the last thing you remember before the accident?
B: I remember / see / my brother's face
- 7 A: What did you do between school and university?
B: I / spend a year / work for my father's business
- 8 A: Have you had a meeting with your boss yet?
B: Yes. I manage / speak to her yesterday

Learner tip

Now that you have come to the end of the Workbook, look through it again and make a list of any language points that you are uncertain about. Ask your teacher to help you with them.

Vocabulary Builder Quiz 16

Download the Vocabulary Builder for Unit 16 and try the quiz below. Write your answers in your notebook. Then check them and record your score.

1 Complete the sentences with a word in the box.

unique	settled	ceremony	independent
converted	venue		

- 1 Our family in the USA 100 years ago.
- 2 The old church was into a private home.
- 3 We need to find a suitable for Nick's 21st birthday party.
- 4 Nothing is quite like Gaudi's architecture.
- 5 The wedding was held in a hotel.
- 6 India became from British rule in 1947.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- 1 The view from the top of the mountain is very IMPRESSED
- 2 The 15th August is a major festival in Greece. RELIGION
- 3 Water is now a major global issue. SHORT
- 4 After World War 2, several countries had problems. ECONOMY
- 5 The of the right-wing party walked out of the meeting. LEAD
- 6 He kept trying to her to marry him. PERSUASION

3 Decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1 A *buffet* is a fight between two armies.
- 2 If you *convert* something you change it into something else.
- 3 A *battle* is a period of ten years.
- 4 A *citizen* is someone who performs operations on patients.
- 5 If something is *distant* it is far away.
- 6 If you *establish* an organisation you start it.
- 7 *Grass* is a green plant that covers the ground in gardens.

4 Choose the word that does not form a collocation with the key word.

- | | |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| 1 background | colony / noise / music |
| 2 trade | route / union / parade |
| 3 civil | war / region / rights |
| 4 oil | rule / company / exports |
| 5 nomadic | bowl / tribe / society |
| 6 gorgeous | dress / agriculture / cake |

Score ____ / 25

Wait a couple of weeks and try the quiz again.
Compare your scores.

AUDIOSCRIPT

UNIT 01

1.1

I = Interviewer, M = Megan

Part 1

- I: I'd like to welcome Megan Bradshaw to the studio this morning. Megan, thanks for coming in.
- M: Good morning David, and thank you for inviting me.
- I: Megan, you're a firefighter. Now there aren't many women firefighters, are there?
- M: Well, the answer to your question is yes and no. Most firefighters *are* men but that is changing. There are now over 200 women firefighters in London.
- I: Over 200! I'm surprised! And how long have you been a firefighter?
- M: About four years now. I joined the fire service as soon as I left school.
- I: Really!? So, what does the job involve? What do you have to do?
- M: Well, most people think that firefighters only put out fires! Obviously we have to put out fires, but only one in five calls is actually for help at a fire.
- I: Really? Only one in five? So if only one in five calls is about fires, what do you do most of the time?
- M: We rescue a lot of people and animals. So, for example, we go out to road and train accidents. And because these are accidents we do a lot of first aid, and look after any injured people.
- I: I see. And what do you do if you aren't fighting fires or at the scene of an accident. Do you just sit around drinking coffee?
- M: No ... not at all! It's a very hard job so you have to be very fit. We do a lot of fitness training – we train every day. We also check the fire engine and our equipment.
- I: I see. And what other work do you do?
- M: Education is a big part of the job.
- I: Education?
- M: Yes, fighting fire is also about education. We go out a lot. To schools and to businesses. We give a lot of talks about safety – it's important that people know about fires and how to stop them. So, there isn't much time for coffee!

1.2

Part 2

- I: ... You seem to be busy all the time! So, do you enjoy the job?
- M: Yeah, I enjoy rescuing someone from a fire or a car accident. It feels great when you help someone. I also like giving talks in schools, and talking to the children. I work in a team of six people and that relationship with my team mates is also important to me. The variety of work is good as well.
- I: And are there any things you don't like about your work?
- M: Yes, some. The job is hard, physically and emotionally. The most difficult part of the job is when someone dies in a fire or a car accident. That is hard, very hard. If that happens, we are all upset for days. Yes, that is still the most difficult part of the job.

- I: Yes, that must be terrible.
- M: Yes, yes it is. Oh, and I really don't like writing reports. We have to write a lot of them ... on fires and accidents. No, I don't like that but it's part of the job.
- I: Well, Megan, thank you very much for coming in this morning. It's been very interesting finding out about the work you do ...

1.3

I = Interviewer; Y = Yoko; V = Viktor

- I: It is the biggest change in the work environment for over 100 years. 'Teleworking', using computers, email and the phone so that you don't need to be in an office. You can work from anywhere but most teleworkers work from home. And it's growing fast! My guests on the programme this morning are both teleworkers. Yoko and Viktor, welcome. So Viktor, you work from home three days a week and go to the office twice. What are the advantages to working from home?
- V: The big thing for me is that I don't have to travel so much. The company I work for is in London, and we live in a small village near Milton Keynes, so that means travelling three hours a day. I get much more work done when I'm at home, as I'm not so tired. If I'm busy, I can work an extra hour or so, and so the company's happy, too! Another thing is that I've got more time and energy for my wife and kids. I go into the office for meetings and training sessions twice a week, but I'm negotiating a deal with my boss to reduce that and work almost completely from home. Teleconference calls make this easy to do now.
- I: Yoko, you're just starting an online business. Do you feel the same way?
- Y: In some ways, yes, but my main reason for working from home is that I'm a single parent, and need to be at home when my kids come home from school. Francois is 9 and Georges is 7. Babysitters are expensive. So teleworking is the best option for me. A friend's husband works from home and he's advising me on how to set it up. I'm doing a lot of research, and am making some proposals to several companies, and one has just made me an offer. It's important to have modern, reliable equipment and fast internet access, and so I'm installing a new computer system at the moment. I'm a little anxious, but I'm really happy about my decision, as it means I can arrange my work patterns to suit my boys' needs, and can also be there for them if they get ill.

1.4

go to a meeting
work from home
negotiate a deal
do research
make a proposal
make someone an offer
sign the contract
employ new staff

UNIT 02

2.1

L = Larry; M = Maria; K = Keith

- L: For most of us, shopping is a leisure time activity. However, this is not true for everyone. On the show this morning are two guests who have a medical problem called compulsive shopping disorder. This means they can't stop shopping. In fact some experts think that 10% of British people are compulsive shoppers. Yes, an amazing 10%! Maria Lomax, you've had this problem for over ten years. How did it start?
- M: Well, Larry, I didn't know it was a problem until I realised I couldn't stop buying things. I wasn't happy unless I was shopping. Then I started having money problems, and this caused arguments with my husband. He finally made me go to see a doctor.
- L: Really! That's awful. And how bad did the problem get?
- M: Well, to give you an example, when I went into a shop and found a top I liked, I used to buy it. But not one top. I'd buy one in every colour. I have 50 bags of clothes in my wardrobe. That's 50 bags of clothes that I've never worn. I also have 135 pairs of shoes.
- L: 135 pairs of shoes!! Really? Amazing. OK, can I now turn to you, Keith. Can you tell us about your problem. Do you buy too many clothes?
- K: Clothes, no ... But I *do* have 104 pairs of trainers. Most of them I've never worn.
- L: You're joking! Do you do a lot of sport then?
- K: No. I go running twice a week, but I just like trainers. But the problem started with books and CDs. I bought lots of CDs – hundreds of them. And I also bought books. I have thousands of books that I have never read. My wife started complaining about all the CDs and books. I stopped buying them. But then I turned my attention to trainers. That caused more problems between my wife and me. She told me that I had to stop. I had to stop buying things or she would leave me.
- L: And did she leave you?
- K: No, I'm happy to say she didn't leave me.
- L: That's good. Compulsive shopping disorder is generally a woman's condition, though, isn't it? Maria?
- M: I don't know, to be honest.
- K: A lot of people think that but studies show that although there *are* more women compulsive shoppers, the number of men with the problem is increasing.
- L: And do you think women and men buy different things? I mean, do women buy more clothes?
- K: Yes, I think there is a difference between men and women. I think women tend to buy clothes and shoes, while men buy CDs, tools, electrical goods.
- L: Well, that is very interesting. I'd like to thank both of my guests for coming on the show and talking to us about a growing problem. *[fade out]*

2.2

food and drink
toiletries and cosmetics
electrical goods
market research
special offer
good value
Far East

UNIT 03

3.1

- 1 crossroads
- 2 roundabout
- 3 underground
- 4 playground
- 5 traffic lights
- 6 sports ground
- 7 town hall
- 8 police station
- 9 traffic warden
- 10 sports programme
- 11 town centre
- 12 police woman

3.2

Go out of the railway station, turn left and then take the first right by the church on the corner. Go straight down the road until you come to a crossroads with some traffic lights. Turn left, go past the monument on your right and then you'll come to a roundabout. Go right at the roundabout and you'll find it at the bottom of the road, just to the left of the bridge.

3.3

A = woman, B = man

- A: Excuse me?
- B: Yes.
- A: How do I get to the town hall? I'm afraid I'm lost.
- B: The town hall. Let me think. OK. Go out of the park, turn left and walk past the playground. After a few minutes you'll come to a roundabout. Let me think. Yes, at the roundabout go straight on until you come to a bridge over the river at the bottom of the road. Stay on this side of the river and turn right. Go straight on for a while and then I think you'll see the town hall on the next corner.
- A: Thank you very much.

3.4

G = Greg; A = Anna

Part 1

- A: So how was your road trip on the famous Route 66 then?
 G: Anna, it was absolutely fantastic. I loved it. I loved every minute of it.
 A: Tell me more. Where did you start?
 G: Well, we hired a car and started in Chicago. Then we drove over to Los Angeles on the west coast.
 A: Wow! How many miles did you drive?
 G: In total ... in total it was 2,448 miles.
 A: 2,448? Really!?
 G: Yep!
 A: And how long did that take you?
 G: 16 days.
 A: 16 days. Wait ... that's, err ... that's about 150 miles a day, right? That's not very fast.
 G: No, it isn't but Route 66 isn't a big motorway. It's only a normal road.
 A: Oh, right.
 G: And because, you can't drive fast in America, you see more.
 A: You really had a good time, didn't you?
 G: I did, I did, yeah. It was a fantastic holiday ... a really good one.

3.5

Part 2

- A: You really had a good time, didn't you?
 G: I did, I did, yeah. It was a fantastic holiday ... a really good one. [fade]
 A: And what were the best bits?
 G: That's a difficult question. We saw and did a lot on those 16 days. Hmm ... I really loved St Louis. St Louis is a pretty big city on the Mississippi River.
 A: That's the biggest river in the US, isn't it?
 G: Yeah, it's big, really big. We went out on a paddleboat and we saw that famous arch.
 A: That famous arch!? What famous arch?
 G: The Arch of St Louis – it's a famous monument. It's almost 200 metres high.
 A: Wow, that is high. And what other things did you see?
 G: Well, we went to this amazing place near Amarillo, in Texas. We wanted to visit this crazy monument called Cadillac Ranch.
 A: Cadillac Ranch?
 G: Yeah, it was built by a Texan millionaire. It's made of ten cars – they are all cadillacs. They are buried nose down in the ground.
 A: Sounds crazy.
 G: Yeah crazy but cool. And you can put graffiti on them. Can you imagine that? You can cover them in graffiti! ... After that we went to the Grand Canyon National Park to see the canyon.
 A: Oh, the Grand Canyon. I've always wanted to go there.
 G: It was wonderful. It's beautiful ... very beautiful. Imagine this place – it's 227 miles long and in some place it's a mile deep.

UNIT 04

4.1

S = Socrates, C = Claire, W = Waiter

Part 1

- S: Have you been here before?
 C: No, I haven't.
 S: Well, I think you'll like it. It's the best Greek restaurant I've ever been to outside Greece.
 C: I've never eaten Greek food before.
 S: So prepare to enjoy yourself! You're going to love it! Shall I order several dishes for us? Then you can try some different things.
 C: Oh ... er ... OK.
 S: Waiter!
 W: Are you ready to order, sir?
 S: Yes. Could we have the ... um ... souvlaki and spetsofai, please?
 W: Certainly. Any salads with that?
 S: I think we'll have tzatziki and ... a Greek salad, please.
 W: Would you like anything to drink?
 S: Shall we have some wine, Claire?
 C: That would be lovely. Red, please.
 S: A bottle of the house red, please.
 W: Thank you, sir.

4.2

Part 2

- C: Mm, this souvlaki is delicious, Socrates. What meat is it, exactly?
 S: It's pork, actually ... You haven't tried the spetsofai yet. That's the spicy sausage with peppers.
 C: It's too spicy for me, I'm afraid. I don't like hot food.
 S: Oh, sorry! I didn't know.
 C: No problem. You like it, anyway. Er ... what's this?
 S: Tzatziki. Yoghurt and cucumber salad.
 C: Let's see ... Ugh! No! ... They've put too much garlic in! Could I have some water, please?
 S: They haven't put enough in for me. I love garlic!
 C: Well, I don't like garlic much, actually. The Greek salad and the souvlaki are lovely, though.
 S: Well, I'm glad you enjoyed some of the food.
 W: Would you like to see the dessert menu, sir?
 S: Claire, would you like something?
 C: Oh no, thanks! I couldn't eat another thing! Could I have a coffee, please?
 S: OK. Could we have two filter coffees, please? ... Oh, and could you bring us the bill, too?
 W: Certainly, sir.

4.3

- 1 would
- 2 shall
- 3 enough
- 4 juice

4.4

1

would
count
could
book

2

shall
champagne
chant
pancake

3

enough
rough
cough
hungry

4

juice
root
boil
fruit

UNIT 05

5.1

D = Dave, H = Heidi, B = Beret

- D: Right, then, girls! Have you decided what you're going to do to get fit? How about you, Heidi?
- H: Yeah, I have, actually. I really like water sports, but want to try something different, so I'm going to have a go at underwater rugby!
- D: Oh, Heidi you're joking! Isn't that for men? A bit violent for you!
- H: No, it isn't. Dave, why do you think 'girls' can't do anything?! 'Girls can't play football, you know. It's not a sport for girls. Heidi, do you think it's good for 'girls' to play basketball?' Wake up, Dave! 'Girls' can play golf, 'girls' can swim, 'girls' can climb mountains, girls can ...
- D: OK, OK, I'm sorry!
- H: Anyway, back to underwater rugby ... Not many people play it, so most teams are mixed – men and WOMEN.
- B: Well, I've never heard of it. Rugby in water? I just can't imagine it.
- H: Yeah, well ... You wear a mask and snorkel and flippe~~r~~s, and you use a ball ... a ball filled with salt water.
- B: And what do they do for the, err, the you know, the goal?
- H: Oh, they use a heavy metal bin. A bin is placed at either end of the pool, and that's the goal.
- D: Aren't you afraid of getting hurt?
- H: Oh, Dave! Stop it!
- D: Stop what?

- H: Stop the '*aren't you afraid of getting hurt?*' Anyway, no I am not afraid of getting hurt. You play the game *under water*. So you can't really hurt yourself. I'm having my first lesson tomorrow evening.
- D: Have you got all the gear?
- H: Not yet. I'm going to go to the sports shop later.
- B: Sounds fun.
- H: Yeah. And how about you, Beret? Are you going to do anything?
- B: I'm not sure yet. I might play volleyball, or tennis. I enjoyed those sports at school.
- D: Why don't you come with me and try something new? I'm going to play sepak takraw!
- H/B: What?
- D: Sepak takraw. It's really popular in Asia. It's rather like volleyball, only you can't hit the ball with your hands or arms. You use your legs and feet.
- H: You use your legs and feet! That sounds impossible!
- D: Yeah, it's pretty hard to do, and you've got to be quite fit.
- H: Come with me instead, Beret! We'll have some fun.
- B: To be honest, Heidi, I'm not a very good swimmer. I don't like going underwater. So, I might try sepak ... whatsit, especially if it's like volleyball.
- D: Well, we're meeting at the gym on Wednesday, at 7pm.
- B: OK, I've decided. I'm going to try sepak takraw.

5.2

1

largest
cyclist
fastest

2

challenging
marathon
badminton

3

ski
beat

easy
team

4

win
instruct
business

5

play
break
race

UNIT 06

6.1

1 Babur Wahidi

I was born in Afghanistan but grew up in the city of Bradford. There were a lot of people from different countries living in the area, so the primary school I attended was a multicultural school. There were children from India, Turkey and Afghanistan in my class. The teachers were really good. They were caring, open minded and patient. I liked the school and had a good time there.

I think I was sometimes treated differently at secondary school because I was Afghan ... Nothing terrible, but I was called bad names by some of the students. This changed when they realised I could play football. I played in the school football team, and the situation improved.

2 Joe Allbright

My childhood was spent on a farm in Shropshire. I really remember two things about growing up there. The first was the feeling of freedom. For example, being able to run across the fields. I had jobs to do, like feeding the chickens, and helping with the harvest, but I could also ride my bike all over the place, or go for a ride on my horse. In that way, I was very lucky. [Pause] The other thing ... the second thing I remember was *not* positive. I often felt lonely because there were no other children living nearby to play with. I didn't have the company of brothers or sisters either. That was difficult during school holidays.

3 Carrie Hutton

My dad was in the army. And because Dad was in the army, we lived in a lot of different parts of the world, and I changed schools a lot. I made new friends, and then left them after only a year, sometimes even six months. We stayed in Cairo for three years when I was a teenager, and I had some really good friends there. It was hard to say goodbye. At first, I was angry with my father, and didn't try to make friends at my new school in Dubai. But in the end, I did. I made new friends. I guess the good thing about moving around was that I learnt several languages, and I also learned how to make friends easily. Now, starting a new job or moving to a new town doesn't worry me at all. In fact, I can't imagine staying in one place for too long!

6.2

Yeah, well my two kids are quite different from each other. People don't believe them when they say they're brother and sister! Jill's the oldest, at 16, and she's tall and slim, with blonde hair, whereas Paul, at 14, is rather short, and overweight. He really likes his food, and doesn't like sport. I get angry with him for spending so much time in front of his computer! Jill's the sporty one in the family, and plays volleyball and tennis. She's friendly and outgoing, and is always out at the weekends, either playing in a match, or shopping with friends. I hope Paul will start going out more soon, but he says he doesn't want to. He's very shy. Still, at least they both like swimming, and go twice a week. Neither of them likes reading much, but they both enjoy going to the cinema, and sometimes do that together.

6.3

1

Ralph and I both like playing sport, but neither of us likes watching it on TV!

2

All of my friends are Linkin Park fans.

3

None of us is very patient.

6.4

1 Both of us

2 All of them

3 Neither of them

4 None of us

5 Many of you

UNIT 07

7.1

L = Landlady, T = Tenant

L: Right, I'll show you your room. It's not very big but it's clean and bright. You've got a little TV and you've got a nice view out of the window here.

T: Oh yeh, that's nice.

L: And you share the bathroom with the gentleman who lives in the next room.

T: That's fine for me.

L: Now, there are a few house rules that you have to follow.

T: OK.

L: This is a non-smoking house, so I'm afraid you can't smoke in any of the rooms.

T: That's OK, I don't smoke anyway.

L: That's good. And you can cook your food downstairs in the kitchen, but not after eight o'clock in the evening because that's when I cook my dinner.

T: That's no problem. Anything else?

L: No, not really. Do you have any questions?

T: Yes. It's a bit cold in here. Is the heating off?

L: Yes, don't worry about that. It comes on at six in the morning and goes off at nine when everyone goes to work. Then it comes on again at six o'clock at night. The heating bills are included in the rent. Is that OK with you?

T: Yes, that's fine.

L: Good. Well, I'm sure you'll be very comfortable here.

T: So how much do I have to pay in advance?

L: The first two months rent please.

T: Two months? Oh, OK.

UNIT 08

8.1

A = boy; B = girl

A: So what subjects are you going to choose next year?

B: It's difficult. I can't decide. What about you?

A: Well, I know the subjects I'm *not* going to choose.

B: Really?

A: Yes! I don't really like history.

- B: No?
- A: No. I'm interested in the future, not the past.
- B: Oh. I quite like history. In fact, I think I might take history next year. I'm interested in the past. It was more exciting than the present, anyway.
- A: Why don't you do Latin as well, then?
- B: Oh no! I don't know why people study Latin.
- A: No?
- B: No. It's a dead language. Nobody speaks it. But what about you? If you're interested in the future, what about IT?
- A: IT? Are you joking? I can't see the point of IT classes.
- B: No? Why?
- A: Everyone knows how to use a computer these days.
- B: That's not true. A lot of people can't use a computer.
- A: Well, I know how to use one, so why study it?
- B: Because it might help you to find a job. In fact, I think I might take IT as well as history. That's a good idea. This is great! I've made three decisions already.

8.2

1

change cheap approach chemistry

2

check attention optional share

3

relationship traditional machine teacher

UNIT 09

9.1

Conversation 1

W = woman; M = man

- W: Hello, there! Are you OK?
- M: No, not really. I've got a terrible headache, and a sore throat. It hurts when I swallow.
- W: Oh, you poor thing! Have you taken anything for it?
- M: Well, I took an aspirin, but it still hurts.
- W: Maybe you should go to see a doctor.
- M: Mm, I don't like going to the doctor's.
- W: Well, you ought to go if your headache's still bad. And why don't you take some throat sweets? Here, I've got some in my bag ... Go on, try them.
- M: Thanks. Mmm, yeah, that's nice.

Conversation 2

M = man; W = woman

- M: Hey! Are you OK?
- W: Aah! Oh dear! I feel really dizzy!
- M: Here, why don't you sit down for a minute? Shall I get you a glass of water?
- W: What...? Oh, yes, please. Thanks.
- M: Here you are. Is that better?
- W: Mm, yes, a little, thanks. I don't know what happened. I just suddenly felt very weak, and couldn't stand up.
- M: Perhaps you ought to see the nurse. Have you eaten anything today?

- W: Well, I had a piece of toast on the way to the office.
- M: And it's now five in the afternoon! You should eat something!

9.2

I = Interviewer, A = Dr Aziz

Part 1

- I: I'm delighted to welcome to the programme today Dr Emil Aziz, who specialises in Down's Syndrome research.
- A: Thank you for inviting me.
- I: Thank you for coming. Now, Dr Aziz, I've read that one in every 1,000 babies born in the UK will have Down's Syndrome or DS.
- A: Yes, yes, that's correct. About one in every thousand.
- I: And do you think that people ... well, that *most* people really understand this condition?
- A: Well, Georgia, one of the problems is that people often think that Down's Syndrome is a mental illness. It is not. It is a condition that occurs before birth. It is *not* a disease, the person is not *ill*, and so does not '*suffer*' from the condition.
- I: But they do have learning difficulties, don't they?
- A: Well, that's not an easy question to answer. Yes, a person with Down's Syndrome will have *some* difficulty in learning. But some people will have more problems and some people will have less. *Most* people will learn to talk, read and write, and *many* go to ordinary schools and lead enjoyable, semi-independent lives.
- I: That's important to know. And how about physical problems? People with Down's Syndrome usually have physical disabilities, don't they?
- A: Ah, another mistaken belief! They *do* have certain physical characteristics that make them look different. For example, their faces may look different. So, people often think this means they are also stupid.
- I: Really?
- A: And people sometimes think they can't do things like walk and play games. But the public need to realise that people with DS just *look* different. They are *people*, however, like you and me. Most of them are very healthy, active and strong.
- I: Yes, that's important to know. And ... talking of being healthy, active and strong, can you tell us about these football clubs here in London?
- A: Yes, there are three football teams in London: the Fulham Badgers, QPR Tiger Cubs and Charlton Upbeats. They are all doing very well, and the players are enthusiastic and hardworking. I've been told that they're the only teams whose players are never late for training!
- I: That's fantastic! So, *doesn't* anyone with DS ever have a physical disability?
- A: Yes, sometimes, but this is often caused by another problem, not by DS itself. Thanks to research, and the wonderful work done by many charities and support groups throughout the UK, children with Down's Syndrome can get the right care and education to lead active lives, and an increasing number are able to then work in the community.

9.3

Part 2

- I: Can you give us an example, Dr Aziz, of someone who has done just that?
- A: Certainly! The story of Ruth Cromer is well-known to anyone involved with DS. She attended school, succeeded in learning to read and write, did not listen to teachers who told her she couldn't do things, and taught herself to type. She became an actress, and has been on TV several times. She also writes articles and gives speeches about the condition.
- I: Amazing! Dr Aziz, that was extremely interesting. Thank you for coming to talk to us, and making us more aware that people with Down's Syndrome are *people*, first and foremost.
- A: Thank you for inviting me, Georgia.

9.4

central
musical
industrial
physical

unbelievable
enjoyable
reliable
curable

9.5

- 1
The flat is really central.
- 2
Most kids are pretty musical.
- 3
That part of town is really industrial.
- 4
Rugby's a very physical game.
- 5
That's unbelievable!
- 6
The course was enjoyable.
- 7
The cars they make are very reliable.
- 8
A lot of diseases are curable.

UNIT 10

10.1

Speaker 1

I want to relax on holiday, and not run around after the kids all the time, so a place with a babysitting service is my first choice. To be honest, I'm not the outdoor type who likes sitting in a tent. I prefer the comfort of a hotel bar and heated pool. Free wi-fi access is also useful, so that I can check my messages from work.

Speaker 2

We like a certain amount of comfort, but don't want the fixed timetable of hotel breakfasts, as we like sleeping in. So we rent an apartment in a small block about 100 metres from the beach. We always go in the low season, so it's cheaper, and as regular customers we get a reduced rate. It's also quieter, which is nice. The furniture's fairly basic, but the cooking facilities are good, and there's a barbecue outside.

Speaker 3

It's a great way to travel around and see different places without spending too much money. Of course, the quality of the facilities differs from one hostel to another, but they're usually fairly clean. I look at online forums before going, to see what other travellers say about a place; you know, whether the showers are clean, how many people you have to share a room with, what the kitchen's like ... Things like that. Then I make a plan of which ones to go to, and which to avoid.

Speaker 4

There's nothing like sleeping in a tent, and it's actually quite comfortable. OK, you need to prepare your equipment beforehand, but it's worth it. We go to an organised campsite, as we're a family, and there's a shower block and washing facilities there. There are usually other families there, so the kids find other children to play with. The place we usually go to also provides meals on site, so if I don't feel like cooking one evening, there's that option.

10.2

Conversation 1

R = Receptionist, M = Mr Wiseman

- R: Reception. Can I help you?
- M: Hello. Mr Wiseman here ... Room 214. I'm not happy with my room. Could you give me another one?
- R: I would if there was one available, sir, but I'm afraid we're fully booked this weekend. What seems to be the problem? Perhaps we can sort it out.
- M: The air conditioning's on too high. It's freezing in here.
- R: No problem, sir. Just turn it down.
- M: I might be able to if I could find the switch!
- R: It's on the wall by the door.
- M: Well, I can't ... Oh, wait ... just a second. Yes, found it! I'd put my coat over it! Thanks very much.

Conversation 2

R = Receptionist, W = Mrs Arnold

- R: Reception.
- W: Oh, hello. I'm Mrs Arnold, from room 304. Could you send someone up, please? My husband's stuck in the bathroom.
- R: Oh, dear! Is the door locked, madam?
- W: No, it's stuck. I've tried pushing it but it won't move.
- R: Right. Wait a moment. I'll see if someone's available ... Jeff? Can you send someone up to 304? The bathroom door's stuck ... Really? Well, can't you go? ... I see. Well, as soon as you can, then ... Mrs Arnold?

- W: Yes?
 R: I'm afraid my colleague's very busy right now. It'll be about ten minutes.
 W: But what are we going to do? My husband's the main speaker at the charity dinner, and it starts in five minutes! Call the manager, please!
 R: I'll see what I can do, Mrs Arnold.

Conversation 3

R = Receptionist, M = Mr Dominguez

- R: Hello, Reception.
 M: Oh, er, hello. It's Mr Dominguez here, in the executive suite. I wonder if you could help me.
 R: If I can, sir, certainly. What's the problem?
 M: Oh, no problem exactly. It's our wedding anniversary, and I didn't have time to buy my wife a present. Is there anything I could order from here?
 R: If I were you, I'd order a big bouquet of red roses. We have an arrangement with a local flower shop. I could phone them for you.
 M: Lovely idea. Could you order them for me then and have them sent up to the room?
 R: Certainly, sir.
 M: Great! Thanks a lot.

10.3

used to
 usually
 useful
 beautiful
 cute

umbrella
 uninteresting
 summer
 suntan
 done

10.4

Double 0-3-0 2-5-1-0 3-6-7-5-4
 2-4-2-1-0 8-9-5-6-7
 6-9-7-9 0-1-0-2-5-9
 Mr Kendall. That's K-E-N-D-A-L-L
 Mrs Tsiakos. That's T-S-I-A-K-O-S
 Miss Pandhi. That's P-A-N-D-H-I

UNIT 11

11.1

...And on a happier note, a young scientist from Yorkshire has discovered a clever way to help people in the poorer countries of Africa. Emily Cummins, aged 21, has invented a fridge that works without electricity, and she did it in her Grandad's garden shed!

The fridge works using the sun's energy. Emily won £5,000 from York Merchant Adventurers for her design and took a year

off from her studies to go to Africa and test out her idea. She helped make more than 50 electricity-free refrigerators during the trip, using such materials as recycled car parts, and the locals named her 'The Fridge Lady'. Emily said that she hopes to continue inventing, and making changes for a better world.

More good news now on the little boy who went missing yesterday. Four-year old Tommy Jones has been found alive and well. He went missing from his home near Burnham Woods yesterday afternoon with his two Labrador puppies. His family were worried that he had run away. However, searchers found both him and the dogs safe this morning. They were fast asleep under a tree. Tommy told his mother that the puppies had kept him warm all night. He is now resting at home. His mother, Anna, said that she's delighted he's safe, but she's going to lock the garden gate in future.

...And finally, the weather forecast. Heavy rain will spread across the south of England today. Floods are expected in some parts so if you are driving, be very careful. Telephone the Environment Agency Floodline for the latest warnings.

11.2

study shortage
 extinct explore invent protect research
 energy natural
 solution pollution resources
 experiment investigate participant
 population

UNIT 12

12.1

R = Receptionist, T = Tina Morrison

- R: Hello, the Ashley Corporation.
 T: Could I speak to Mr Khalil please?
 R: Who's speaking, please?
 T: It's Tina Morrison.
 R: Oh, I'm sorry, Mr Khalil is working at home today. Can I take a message?
 T: Yes, please. Could you tell him that I called? It's Tina Morrison. It's about our meeting next Thursday. I'm sorry but I'm going to be away on business that day, so can we change the meeting to Friday? The same time, three o'clock at my office. He knows where it is. If there are any problems, tell him to call my mobile on 08897 6576548. Thanks.
 R: I'll pass that message on to him.
 T: Thanks, bye!

12.2

- 1 polite possible
- 2 possible common
- 3 common comfortable
- 4 obtain opinion
- 5 hole hold
- 6 operation remote

12.3

Thank you for calling Lucibello Bank. You now have four options. To check your current bank balance, press one. For information about opening a new account, press two. For technical support with our internet banking services, press three. For all other queries or to speak to an adviser, press four.

[beep]

Thank you for calling Lucibello Bank. Your call is important to us. A member of our dedicated customer services team will be available to speak to you shortly. Please note that calls may be recorded for training purposes. Unfortunately, we are currently experiencing a high volume of calls and your call is being held in a queue. Your wait time at the moment is approximately 12 minutes. You may find it more convenient to call back later. Thank you for calling Lucibello Bank. Your call is important to us.

UNIT 13

13.1

B = Brad, A = Abha

- B: Have you found the website, Abha?
- A: Yes, here it is. Now, let's see what's on... Films showing now ... There's that new thriller, *Run and Hide*, directed by Antonio Torres. Andreas Dumas is in it. It's supposed to be good.
- B: Mm, I've heard it's nothing special. Kate went and saw it last Friday, and she said she was bored. It was too predictable, she said. She knew who the killer was long before the end.
- A: OK ... Well, then how about *The Mansford Saga*? Jeffrey Hinds is in it. Mm, I like him!
- B: What's it about?
- A: It's a family drama, set in 1860. They're rich but they lose their money, and then have to struggle to survive. Sounds interesting. Zena Williams is in it too.
- B: It sounds boring to me! Isn't there anything lighter on, like a comedy, for instance?
- A: Right! Here's one. *Mr Pickles*, starring Thierry Dumand and Catherine Pickard. Wasn't he in that film we saw a couple of weeks ago?
- B: *The Partygoer*, yes. He's good. Shall we go and see that, then?
- A: OK. It's on at the Palace, in Walker Street.
- B: That's not far. We can walk there. What time does it start?
- A: The first showing is at 3, and then there's another one at 5.30.
- B: Let's go to the 5.30 one. Then I'll take you to that nice Italian place afterwards. They do a great carbonara.
- A: OK, Brad. Great.

13.2

excited
bored
tired
disappointed
interested
starred
amazed
treated
played
surprised
directed
recorded

UNIT 14

14.1

- A: Morning! Have you got everything ready?
- B: Of course not. I've only just arrived... What do we need today?
- A: Well we have to clean the carpets in the lobby, so we'll need the vacuum cleaner.
- B: Where's that, then?
- A: Usual place. Under the stairs.
- B: Right.
- A: And we've got to clean the marble floor in the dining room ...
- B: ... so we'll need the mop and the bucket.
- A: That's in the cupboard behind the reception area. And we'll also need a cloth because we've got to wipe all the mirrors.
- B: And remind me – where do we keep the cloths?
- A: In the drawer in the staff room, of course.
- B: Oh yeah.
- A: And we also need a hammer and some nails because we have to put up a picture.
- B: And where do we keep those?
- A: Down in the cellar.
- B: Oh yes, it's dark down there isn't it? We'll need ... we'll need ... what do you call it? A ... A ...
- A: What are you talking about?
- B: Well, the light doesn't work down there so we'll need a ... You know. We'll need a ... a ...

14.2

- 1 class
- 2 gave
- 3 bin
- 4 pair
- 5 gold
- 6 could
- 7 ban
- 8 pad
- 9 goal
- 10 pouring

14.3

G = Gianni; J-P = Jean-Paul

- G: Hi Jean-Paul! So how was Rachel's trip to Scotland?
- J-P: Oh, hi Gianni! Yeah, she had a great time. But she brought me back this really strange present.
- G: Really? What's it like?
- J-P: Well, it's a bit like a handbag but you wear it round your waist.
- G: Round your *waist*?
- J-P: Yes. It's made of leather and apparently in Scotland men wear them.
- G: Oh I know what it is. Does it have three tassels on the front?
- J-P: Tassels?
- G: Yes, extra bits of leather that hang down.
- J-P: Yes, it does.
- G: It's called a *sporrán*. It's a traditional part of Scottish dress. You wear it with a kilt.
- J-P: A *sporrán*? How do you know that?

UNIT 15

15.1

C = Carlos; Y = Yelena

- C: So, you're moving to Prague. But I thought you liked living here.
- Y: I do, but if Miguel and I get married, I want him to know something about my country, and to understand the culture, the language, and so on.
- C: Can't you just go for a holiday?
- Y: You don't learn much from a holiday, Carlos! No, we've decided to go for two or three years, and then see where we'd prefer to live and bring up a family.
- C: OK, but the cost of living's really high in Prague, isn't it?
- Y: Not much higher than it is here in Argentina. Also, unemployment has fallen there in the last few years, and is lower than it is here. So, I think we'll find jobs fairly easily.
- C: But the economy's doing better here now, though, and you get paid quite well, don't you?
- Y: Yes, Carlos. It's not that I don't like it here. I'm happy, and have a good quality of life, but things are getting more expensive, and it's not easy to buy a house here. In the Czech Republic, house prices are generally cheaper, and so are cars.
- C: Perhaps, but eating out is cheaper here, and as you told me, you can't beat the night life here!
- Y: True, but I'm thinking more of the future. The salaries are higher in Prague. I could get paid more for doing the same job as I'm doing now.
- C: Do you think Miguel will like it there?
- Y: I have no idea! That's why I want him to try it. Don't worry, Carlos! You're not going to lose your best friend! I just think it's important for us to see where we are both happier, and we can't do that if we don't try living in both countries. Anyway, you can come and visit!
- C: Yeah, I suppose you're right.

15.2

P = Primo, I = Isabel

- P: What are you doing, Isabel?
- I: Oh, just paying some bills.
- P: What, you're paying them online? I didn't know you could do that.
- I: Yes, it's easy, too. You can do it through your bank, or the service itself. I pay my phone bill to the phone company's bill payment service on its website.
- P: Really? It must save you a lot of time!
- I: Yes, and it's good for the environment, too. You don't use any paper! I pay my mortgage and electricity through the online banking service. I just order the bank to transfer the amount each month.
- P: Is it safe, though? I mean, don't you worry about someone stealing your bank details and then taking all your money?
- I: Well, there are some risks, but we change ID numbers and security codes fairly often, so they're difficult to copy. You should try it, Primo. It would be much easier for you.
- P: Mm, perhaps I'll try it myself. I hate standing in the queue for hours waiting to pay the electricity bill! And then I often can't understand what the cashier says! The Scottish accent is not easy!
- I: I know! This way it only takes you a few minutes, and no need to talk!
- P: Sounds great!

15.3

1

Buy a house when the price is right, and pay your bills online.

2

Take out a loan to buy your own home, then owe the bank money until you grow old.

3

Twenty-five pounds for a meal may not sound much but is a large amount for a pizza.

4

I got paid a good wage for my job in sales, and was able to save for a holiday in Wales.

UNIT 16

16.1

- A: So what kind of party is it going to be? It's your birthday, isn't it?
- B: Yes, it's my 21st birthday, so I want something big and noisy.
- A: With lots of people? How many do you want to invite?
- B: Oh, at least a hundred.
- A: OK. And what sort of venue do you want? Have you seen somewhere you like?
- B: Hmm. I don't know. Have you got any suggestions?
- A: I know a really good new nightclub in a shopping mall just out of town.
- B: Oh no. I don't think so. Can you think of anywhere else?

- A: Well, there's also a really good converted warehouse near the beach. You can get at least a hundred people in there.
 B: That sounds great.
 A: And are you going to serve any food? How about a cold buffet?
 B: Yeah, a cold buffet's good.
 A: And what kind of music would you like?
 B: Well, definitely not background music. I want a really good DJ and I want it to be loud.
 A: No problem. And what time do you want the party to finish? It will be late, won't it?
 B: No earlier than three.
 A: Shall we say three to four in the morning?
 B: Yeah, that's great.

16.2

1

- A: With lots of people?
 B: Oh yes, at least a hundred.

2

- A: How about a cold buffet?
 B: Yeah, a cold buffet's good.

3

- A: Shall we say three to four in the morning?
 B: Yeah, that's great.

16.3

- 1 Where did you go last night?
- 2 Did you see what she was wearing?
- 3 Why were you so rude to him?
- 4 Have you been here before?
- 5 How many people here do you know?
- 6 Are you going to eat something?
- 7 Who's that man in the sunglasses near the bar?
- 8 Do you have the time?

16.4

Now, this room contains the famous Bayeux Tapestry. As you can see, at this end it shows the events leading to the Norman invasion of England in 1066. As we walk round, you'll see the Normans' sea journey to England, the Battle of Hastings itself and the death of King Harold. We are not sure exactly when the tapestry was made but it dates from the 11th century. One legend says that it was made by William the Conqueror's wife, Queen Matilda. However, many historians now think that King William's brother paid for the tapestry to be made. This is the original tapestry, but there is also a copy at the Museum of Reading in England. Right, are there any questions so far?

ANSWER KEY

UNIT 01

VOCABULARY Talking about jobs

1

- 1 e; 2 g; 3 a; 4 f; 5 h; 6 b;
7 c; 8 d

2

- 1 nurse; 5 journalist;
2 scientist; 6 sales manager;
3 police officer; 7 soldier;
4 pilot; 8 engineer

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Questions about jobs

3

- 1 b; 2 c; 3 e; 4 a; 5 f; 6 d

4

- 1 What do you do?
2 Do you enjoy it?
3 What are the hours like?
4 Is the money good?
5 Do you get on with the people you work with?

LISTENING

5

- 1 F (there are over 200 women firefighters in London);
2 F (only one in five calls is about a fire);
3 T; 4 T; 5 F; 6 T

7

The following should be ticked:
rescue people and animals; write reports on accidents; go to fires; check equipment; give first aid; make visits to schools; do fitness training

8

- 1 Megan enjoys rescuing people.
2 She also likes giving talks in schools talking to the children.
3 The most difficult part of the job is when someone dies.
4 Megan really doesn't like writing reports.

GRAMMAR Present simple and present continuous

9

- 1 do you do; 6 are you working;
2 Do you work; 7 are designing;
3 run; 8 Do you ever get;
4 do you work; 9 don't work;
5 are working; 10 share

10

- 1 organise; 5 are preparing;
2 experience; 6 is looking;
3 have; 7 are placing;
4 am checking; 8 is

VOCABULARY Time management

1

- 1 list; 4 appointment; 7 delay;
2 rushing; 5 arrange; 8 take a break
3 priority; 6 stay up late;

GRAMMAR Present simple and continuous for the future

2

- 1 d; 2 f; 3 e; 4 b; 5 a; 6 c

3

- 1 I haven't got an appointment with the sales manager this morning.
2 We aren't working on the new project this afternoon.
3 There isn't a meeting next Friday to discuss progress.
4 My contract doesn't end in two months.
5 Jorge isn't attending a training course tomorrow.
6 I'm not leaving work at the end of this month.

4

- 1 are you doing; 5 I'm going;
2 I'm flying; 6 I've got;
3 starts/is starting; 7 I'm travelling;
4 I'm working; 8 takes off

VOCABULARY Collocations

5

- 1 manage a ~; 5 need more~;
2 attend ~ training; 6 go to a ~;
3 (not) be a ~; 7 a positive ~;
4 agree a new ~; 8 a part-time ~

6

- 1 manage a project; 5 need more staff;
2 attend staff training; 6 go to a meeting;
3 (not) be a priority; 7 a positive meeting;
4 agree a new contract; 8 a part-time job

7

- 1 staff; 4 contract; 7 interview;
2 project; 5 priority; 8 training
3 meeting; 6 job;

READING

8

- 1 B; 2 D; 3 A; 4 C

9

- 1 D; 3 A; 5 B & C; 7 D;
2 B & C; 4 C; 6 A; 8 A

10

- 1 long hours; 4 job advertisement;
2 work experience; 5 training session;
3 temporary contract; 6 marketing department

VOCABULARY Activities at work

1

- 1 are installing, is causing; 3 am studying;
2 am doing, am gaining; 4 am attending, are advertising

2

- 1 working on; 3 advising; 5 organise;
2 teaching; 4 learning; 6 negotiate

LISTENING

3

- 1 Viktor: doesn't want to travel long distances to and from work; Yoko: single parent, needs to be home for kids.
2 Viktor: not so tired, works more effectively, more time and energy for family; Yoko: is able to arrange work around kids' timetables, and is there if they get sick.

PRONUNCIATION Stress in verb collocations

4

- go to a meeting work from home
negotiate a deal do research
make a proposal make someone an offer
sign the contract employ new staff

DEVELOPING WRITING

A formal email, asking for information

7

Information and an application form

8

1 B; 2 C; 3 D; 4 A

9

informal email	formal email
Hi Gill	Dear Ms Dunn
I'm working in a pub at the moment.	At present, I am studying marine biology at Southampton University.
Can you send me the photos from your party?	Could you please send me more information?
Thanks a lot.	Thank you very much.
Can't wait to hear from you!	I look forward to hearing from you.
Lots of love	Yours sincerely
Charlie	Chad Duffy

10

Example answer: Dear Mr Norman,
I saw your advertisement for researchers on the Natural History Museum's website, and I am writing to ask for further information about the position.
At present, I am a second-year post-graduate student, studying for a PhD in Marine Biology at Southampton University. I have a special interest in endangered sea plants, and am hoping to gain some work experience in this area.
I am very interested in the post. Could you please send me an application form, and some more information about which seas you are studying and whether we will be going on study trips?
I look forward to hearing from you.
Yours sincerely,
Chad Duffy

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 1

1

- 1 arrange; 2 interview; 3 temporary; 4 launching; 5 break; 6 staff; 7 giving; 8 management

2

- 1 presentation; 2 relaxation; 3 management; 4 distribution; 5 advertisement

3

- 1 T; 2 F; 3 F; 4 T; 5 T; 6 F

4

- 1 research; 2 exploiting; 3 attending; 4 customers; 5 rights; 6 strike

UNIT 02

VOCABULARY Describing things you bought

1

Things we wear	Materials	Things we use
coat, hat, jewellery, shoes, suit, trousers, T-shirt, jeans, shirt, skirt, dress, top, trainers	leather, gold, silver, wool	sofa, bike, mobile phone, laptop, camera

2

- 1 trousers, suits, skirts, dresses; 2 shoes, trainers; 3 mobile phone, camera, laptop, bike; 4 coat, suit; 5 T-shirt, dress, skirt, shirt, top; 6 sofa; 7 jewellery; 8 mobile phone, laptop, camera

3

- 1 quality; 2 last; 3 looked better; 4 functions; 5 complicated; 6 easy; 7 cool; 8 to follow

LISTENING

4

- 1 F; 2 T; 3 F; 4 F; 5 F; 6 T

5

- 1 Maria's husband told her to go and see a doctor.
2 It has caused problems between Keith and his wife.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Complimenting

6

- 1 love/like; 2 suits you; 3 design; 4 did you get it; 5 great; 6 long have you had it; 7 like/love; 8 comfortable

GRAMMAR Past simple

7

- 1 c; 2 e; 3 b; 4 d; 5 a

8

- 1 bought; 2 sold; 3 went, found; 4 gave; 5 costs; 6 spent, saw

9

- 1 Did you go; 2 was; 3 Did you find; 4 didn't have; 5 got/did get; 6 did you get; 7 bought; 8 Did; 9 found; 10 didn't you buy

VOCABULARY Shopping online

1

- 1 reduced; 2 service; 3 stock; 4 delivered; 5 bid; 6 suits

2

- 1 wide selection; 2 second-hand; 3 bargain; 4 dropped; 5 reliable; 6 out of the box; 7 damaged; 8 my money back; 9 fault

3

- A 1 F; 2 T; 3 F; 4 F; 5 T; 6 F
B 1 C; 2 C; 3 A; 4 B; 5 B; 6 A; 7 A; 8 C; 9 C; 10 B

READING

4

food and drink	clothing	toiletries and cosmetics	electrical goods
wine cheese chicken	shirt trousers skirt	toothbrush face cream lipstick	hairdryer vacuum cleaner dishwasher

5

2

6

1 b; 2 a; 3 a; 4 b

7

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 greater ability; | 5 most noticeable; |
| 2 are more interested than men; | 6 younger men; |
| 3 greater consumers; | 7 more interested in; |
| 4 more popular; | 8 more active role |

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Offering to help

1

Making offers: Would you like a; Do you want me to;
Do you want to

Checking: You don't mind; Are you sure

Reassuring: Of course; Not at all

Accepting the offer: Thanks; Thanks a lot

2

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Would you like a | 6 Do you want to |
| 2 Do you want me to | 7 You don't mind |
| 3 Are you sure | 8 Not at all |
| 4 Of course | 9 Thanks a lot/Thanks |
| 5 Thanks/Thanks a lot | |

GRAMMAR Comparatives

3

1 c; 2 b; 3 a; 4 c; 5 b

4

- Have you got/Do you have a larger one?
- Have you got/Do you have anything cheaper?
- Have you got/Do you have one of a better quality?
- Have you got/Do you have anything more modern?
- Have you got/Do you have anything more comfortable?

DEVELOPING WRITING An email – informal writing

5

- c
- To thank him for her birthday present and to tell him her news.
- She went shopping
- Enrique is coming to stay in Milan and they are going on a camping trip.

6

- | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|
| 1 went; | 4 wished; | 7 bought; |
| 2 played; | 5 gave; | 8 paid |
| 3 thought; | 6 decided; | |

7

Hi, James!; Dear Julie; How are you?; It was great to hear from you again; I wanted to ask you something; Write soon; Take care; Best wishes

8

Example answer:

Hi, Elena!

Thanks for your email. I'm glad you like the top, and enjoyed your birthday. It sounds like you had a good night out! Can't wait to go to some of these night clubs you mention!

Well done with your shopping. I also bought a new sleeping bag last week, and some new climbing shoes. So, don't worry, I won't forget to pack them! My dad's already got me some money in euros, so I'm ready for the trip!

Are we going to the beach? If so, I'll pack my swimming things. Can you think of anything else I need to bring? Let me know.

Can't wait to see you!

Take care,

Enrique

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 2

1

1 b; 2 f; 3 e; 4 c; 5 d; 6 a

2

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 1 instructions; | 5 present; |
| 2 delivery; | 6 material; |
| 3 designs; | 7 quality |
| 4 receipt; | |

3

1 d; 2 f; 3 b; 4 a; 5 c; 6 e

4

1 F; 2 T; 3 T; 4 F; 5 F; 6 T

UNIT 03**VOCABULARY** Places in town

1



2

- sports TV
- police day
- town shop (you can say 'a shop in town')
- cross shirt
- traffic car (you can say 'cars in a traffic jam')
- play person
- bus drink
- church person (you can say a churchgoer)

PRONUNCIATION Stress on compound nouns

3

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 'crossroads | 'roundabout | 'underground |
| 'playground | 'traffic lights | 'sports ground |
| town 'hall | pol'ice station | 'traffic warden |
| 'sports programme | town 'centre | pol'ice woman |

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Giving directions

5

- Excuse me. How do I get to the sports ground?
- Excuse me. Is there a tube station near here?
- Excuse me. Do you know where the police station is?
- Excuse me. Do you know the way to the town hall?
- Excuse me. Can you tell me how to get to the museum, please?
- Excuse me. Where's the nearest bank?

6

1 c	2 d	3 g	4 b	5 h	6 f
7 a	8 e				

LISTENING**7**

The sports ground

8

1; 4; 5; 6; 7; 8; 9; 10

9

- 1 The town hall.
- 2 He says, 'Go straight on at the roundabout.'
- 3 The cinema.

READING**1**

b

2

- 1 F; 2 T; 3 F; 4 T; 5 F; 6 F;
- 7 F; 8 F

VOCABULARY Travelling by plane**3**

- 1 e; 2 g; 3 h; 4 f; 5 a; 6 c;
- 7 b; 8 d

GRAMMAR Past simple and past continuous**4**

- 1 were waiting; 4 were sitting, told;
- 2 was going; 5 were travelling, had to;
- 3 stole; 6 was taking off, went

5

- 1 was travelling, lost;
- 2 wasn't running, took;
- 3 dropped, was running;
- 4 was talking, heard;
- 5 knocked, was leaving

6

- 1 went; 9 arrived;
- 2 bought; 10 took;
- 3 came; 11 was going;
- 4 was raining; 12 stopped;
- 5 called; 13 was getting;
- 6 asked; 14 got;
- 7 was getting; 15 were closing
- 8 went;

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Apologising for being late**7**

- 1 was chatting to, At least;
- 2 got stuck in, Don't worry;
- 3 missed, haven't been here

LISTENING**8**

- 1 a; 2 b; 3 b; 4 a;

9

- 1 river, park; 3 cadillac, monument
- 2 river, paddleboat;

10

- 1 St Louis; 3 Grand Canyon
- 2 Cadillac Ranch;

VOCABULARY Transport**1**

- | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1 truck; | 5 coach; | |
| 2 huge load; | 6 service station; | |
| 3 motorway; | 7 passengers; | |
| 4 long line of cars; | 8 train | |
| 1 licence; | 2 test; | |
| 3 ride; | 4 motorbike | |
| 1 taxi; | 4 underground; | |
| 2 charge; | 5 travel card; | |
| 3 tip; | 6 lines | |
| 1 rail service; | 4 hire a vehicle; | 7 park; |
| 2 cancelled; | 5 drive; | 8 bikes; |
| 3 on strike; | 6 van; | 9 cycle lanes |

2

- | | | |
|------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1 car; | 3 underground; | 5 policeman; |
| 2 crashed; | 4 licence; | 6 a website |

GRAMMAR Quantifiers**3**

- a 2; b 1; c 3

4

- 1 There isn't much traffic on the road.
- 2 There isn't a lot of traffic on the road.
- 3 There isn't any traffic on the road.

5

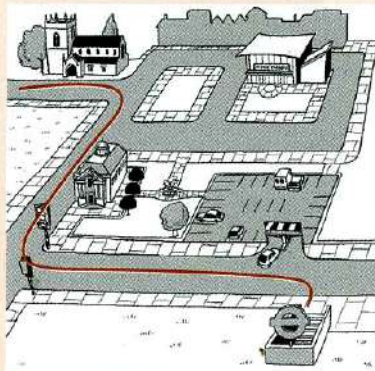
- 1 There aren't many car parks in this town.
- 2 There's a strike today, so there's no public transport.
- 3 It's very polluted here because there's a lot of industry in this area.
- 4 I can't lend you anything because I've only got a little money on me.
- 5 She's in a terrible hurry because she only has a few minutes before her bus arrives.

6

many, much, any, a few, much, a lot of

DEVELOPING WRITING**7**

- 1 Dinner on Saturday
- 2 Take the tube to Scott's Park and then walk
- 3



- 4 Call Peter on 09736727887.

8

Example answer:
 From: (Your name)
 Subject: Lunch on Friday
 Date: (Today's date)
 To: Martine Kovacs

Hi Martine,
I'm pleased to hear that you can come round for lunch on Friday. It's probably best if you take the tube to Scott's Park station and then walk to my house. When you come out of the station, turn left and go down the road until you come to the traffic lights. Then, turn right, go past the town hall and take the second turning on the right. This is the High Street and I am at number 23, opposite the cinema.
If there's a problem, give me a call on (your phone number).
Look forward to seeing you at 1.00 on Friday.
Best wishes,
(Your name)

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 3

- 1**
1 council; 2 traffic jam; 3 roundabout; 4 playground; 5 licence; 6 town hall
- 2**
1 e; 2 f; 3 d; 4 c; 5 b; 6 a
- 3**
1 departures; 2 unfortunately; 3 delayed; 4 connection; 5 security; 6 service
- 4**
1 T; 2 T; 3 F; 4 T; 5 F; 6 T; 7 F

UNIT 04

VOCABULARY Restaurants

- 1**
1 fast food; 2 Japanese; 3 seafood; 4 Mexican; 5 Italian; 6 Chinese

- 2**
1 e; 2 a; 3 b; 4 c; 5 d

3

describing food	describing service	describing the restaurant
choice, disgusting, delicious, portions, big selection, fixed menu, options, dishes, plenty to choose from	staff, rude, friendly	busy, place, value, view, terrace, expensive

- 4**
1 big selection, dishes, plenty to choose from;
2 delicious, portions;
3 busy, value;
4 terrace, view;
5 disgusting, rude;
6 place, staff, friendly;
7 fixed menu, choice;
8 expensive, options

GRAMMAR Present perfect simple

- 5**
1 d; 2 e; 3 f; 4 c; 5 a; 6 b

6

- 1 Have you ever eaten 4 I've made
2 Have you been, I've been 5 has never eaten
3 Have you ever tried 6 Have you read

7

- 1 Have you been, I came, I've never been, Have you visited, I haven't, I went
2 Have you been, I went, Was he

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Suggestions

8

- 1 How about that Thai place round the corner?
Well, we could go to that vegetarian restaurant in the square, instead.
2 How about the new sushi bar on Samson Street?
Well, we could go to that Greek restaurant down the road instead.
3 How about that seafood restaurant in the centre?
Well, we could go to The Cooking Pot on James Street instead.

9

- 1 d; 2 b; 3 e; 4 f; 5 c; 6 a

READING

1

- A France; B Vietnam; C Ireland; D Austria

2

- 1 A, C, D; 2 B; 3 A; 4 D; 5 B

3

- 1 f; 2 h; 3 e; 4 j; 5 b; 6 i; 7 d;
8 a; 9 c; 10 g

4

- 1 coffee, orange juice, ice cream
2 football team, restaurant, person, Mexican
3 food, ingredients, dishes, colours
4 fruit, fish, water, vegetables, bread
5 fast, spicy, health, junk, frozen
6 reasonable, discount, full, half

VOCABULARY Describing food

5

- 1 d; 2 f; 3 c; 4 a; 5 e; 6 b

PRONUNCIATION

6

- 1 could, book; 2 champagne, pancake; 3 rough, hungry; 4 root, fruit

GRAMMAR Offers, requests, suggestions

9

- 1 c; 2 a; 3 b; 4 d; 5 a; 6 d;
7 c; 8 b

10

- 1 No, thank you. I don't drink (alcohol). Could you bring me a bottle of sparkling water, please?
2 Could I leave early, please?
3 (To be honest) I don't feel like Chinese / noodles. Could we go for a pizza, instead?
4 Shall I help you look for them, sir?

GRAMMAR *too and not ... enough***1**

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 too spicy; | 4 chilled enough; |
| 2 too hard; | 5 too expensive; |
| 3 cooked enough; | 6 not big enough |

2

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1 haven't been; | 4 I've never heard; |
| 2 too slow; | 5 wasn't hot enough; |
| 3 Have you tried; | 6 has had |

3

Answers may vary. Example answers:
 The kitchen is too untidy to work in.
 The kitchen is too dirty to cook in.
 The chef has got too much work.
 There isn't enough room to work in or The room isn't big enough.

LISTENING**4**

A Greek restaurant

5

- 1 tzatziki, spetsofai, souvlaki;
- 2 wine

6

- 1 It's too hot / She doesn't like sausage.
- 2 No, she doesn't. There's too much garlic in it.
- 3 No, they don't. (They just have coffee.)

7

Socrates is enthusiastic. Claire likes some of it

8

- 1 c; 2 a; 3 d; 4 b

DEVELOPING WRITING A review – a restaurant**9**

- 1 The Flying Fish
- 2 The Taj Mahal

10

- 1 (A) delicious, squid soft and juicy, cooked perfectly. (B) tasty and well-prepared. Vindaloo spicy and full of flavour.
- 2 (A) good. Staff extremely helpful. (B) not good. Staff unfriendly and service slow.
- 3 (A) room too dark, couldn't see food. (B) pleasant, nicely decorated.
- 4 (A) reasonable, good value for money. (B) very expensive, disappointing

11

Answers will vary slightly, but students should choose from the following for each section.

Name of restaurant: Answers will vary.

- 1 quality of food: delicious, full of flavour, well-prepared, tasteless, overcooked
- 2 the service: friendly and polite, fast, helpful, unfriendly and rude, slow
- 3 the interior design: modern, tastefully decorated, well-lit, dark, unwelcoming
- 4 the price: reasonable, good value for money, cheap, too expensive

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 4**1**

- | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1 e; | 2 g; | 3 b; | 4 h; | 5 a; | 6 c; |
| 7 d; | 8 f | | | | |

2

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1 properly; | 3 traditional; | 5 bookings; |
| 2 mixture; | 4 cookery; | 6 choice |

3

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1 raw; | 3 skins; | 5 tip; |
| 2 delicious; | 4 suggested; | 6 contained |

4

- | | | |
|----------|-----------|---------|
| 1 spicy; | 3 soft; | 5 salty |
| 2 sweet; | 4 bitter; | |

UNIT 05**VOCABULARY** Places and equipment**1**

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1 course; | 5 pool; |
| 2 river; | 6 court; |
| 3 studio; | 7 gym; |
| 4 pitch; | 8 track |

2

- | | |
|------------|------------------|
| 1 tennis; | 6 fishing; |
| 2 golf; | 7 swimming; |
| 3 dance; | 8 football team; |
| 4 drawing; | 9 sports gear; |
| 5 running; | 10 game |

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Introducing negative comments

3

- 1 the acting wasn't (very) good.
- 2 I was disappointed that/because Chelsea didn't win.
- 3 I don't like romantic novels.
- 4 I can't stand swimming.
- 5 I'm useless at tennis.
- 6 I think golf's boring.

4

Suggested answers:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 I must admit; | 4 it was too difficult. |
| 2 to be honest; | 5 I prefer dancing. |
| 3 I have to say | 6 I don't like sport much any more. |

GRAMMAR

Plans and arrangements

6

- 1 c; 2 e; 3 a; 4 f; 5 b; 6 d

7

- 1 We're meeting;
- 2 I'm thinking of going;
- 3 What are you doing; I might go;
- 4 I'm going to do; I might do;
- 5 Are you going to come; are you going to meet?
- 6 I'm going to watch

8

- 1 are meeting;
- 2 are you coming / are you going to come, I might go;
- 3 What are you doing? I'm going to go;
- 4 are having; are we going to do

LISTENING

9

- 1 underwater rugby; 3 tennis;
2 sepak takraw; 4 badminton

10

Dave: sepak takraw
Heidi: underwater rugby
Beret: sepak takraw

11

- 1 Heidi likes water sports.
2 Dave suggests that girls can't do certain sports.
3 Because Beret is not a good swimmer.
4 Because it's played under the water.
5 legs and feet
6 Because sepak takraw is like volleyball, which Beret likes playing.

VOCABULARY Sports and games

1

- 1 beat; 3 won; 5 supported;
2 scored; 4 timed; 6 throw

2

football pitch; tennis racket; tennis court; running track; golf course; golf clubs; swimming gear; swimming pool; dance class; sports event

3

- 1 football pitch 3 tennis racket 5 golf course
2 swimming gear 4 running track

4

- 1 d; 2 f; 3 a; 4 c; 5 b; 6 e

GRAMMAR Superlatives

5

- 1 most exciting; 6 hardest;
2 biggest; 7 worst;
3 easiest; 8 most popular;
4 best; 9 fittest;
5 most expensive; 10 most successful

6

- 1 This is the most expensive car I've ever bought.
2 This is the most exciting sport I've ever tried.
3 That's the biggest pizza I've ever seen.
4 That was the best game he's ever played.
5 She's the most successful tennis player I've ever known.
6 That was the easiest game I've ever won.

7

- 1 longest; 4 fastest; 6 largest;
2 largest; 5 most expensive; 7 longest
3 most challenging;

8

- a 24 hours; d 8 days; f 594;
b 98,772 people; e \$132 million; g 31 hours
c 3,000 miles;

PRONUNCIATION

9 & 11

/ɪ/	/ei/	/æ/	/ist/	/i:/
win instruct business interesting pretty	play break race stadium game	challenging marathon badminton exam	largest cyclist fastest longest	ski easy team complete achieve

VOCABULARY Word families

1

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
tired happy aware conscious fit	tiredness happiness awareness consciousness fitness	homeless weak ill lazy mad	homelessness weakness illness laziness madness

2

- 1 homelessness; 3 lazy; 5 madness;
2 populated; 4 awareness; 6 weak

READING

3

The picture features a yoga breathing technique.

4

- 1 T; 2 F; 3 T; 4 F; 5 T; 6 T

DEVELOPING WRITING

A blog – your favourite game

5

- 1 chess;
2 His father taught him when he was five;
3 12 years;
4 He's going to play in a tournament

6

- 1 b; 2 c; 3 a

7

Answers will vary. Suggested answers: join a club; I've been a member for ...; it's the most exciting / enjoyable / interesting ...; team game; you can meet people; I play against / with; practise / train hard; do well; take part in a match/tournament ...

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 5

1

- 1 beat; 3 pitch; 5 prevent
2 messy; 4 difference;

2

- 1 on; 3 at; 5 by
2 against; 4 at;

3

- 1 rivalry; 3 unfit; 5 strength
2 originally; 4 forgetful;

4

- 1 b; 2 e; 3 a; 4 c; 5 d

5

- 1 rod; 3 racket; 5 a film
2 scores; 4 a season;

UNIT 06

VOCABULARY Family and friends

1

Jim: granddad;	Shirley: gran;
Brian: dad;	Jean: mum;
Dave: uncle;	Sheila: aunt;
Declan: brother;	Sara: sister-in-law;
James: cousin;	Matt: nephew;
Susie: niece	

2

1 dad;	7 uncle;
2 mum;	8 aunt;
3 brother;	9 cousin;
4 sister-in-law;	10 granddad;
5 nephew;	11 gran
6 Susie;	

3

1 ex-wife/husband;	5 mother/father-in-law;
2 neighbour;	6 classmate;
3 partner;	7 flatmate;
4 girlfriend/boyfriend;	8 colleague

GRAMMAR Question formation

4

- Question: When did you start learning English?
Example answer: Two years ago.
- Question: How long have you known your best friend?
Example answer: Twelve years.
- Question: What is your favourite food?
Example answer: Vegetable lasagne.
- Question: Do you like Madonna?
Example answer: Yes, I do / No, not really.
- Question: How much do you pay to go to the cinema in your country?
Example answer: Eight euros.
- Question: Is your hair dark or fair?
Example answer: It's dark.
- Question: Why do you like your best friend?
Example answer: Because she's honest, and we like the same things.
- Question: How old are you? Do you still go to school? Or do you work?
Example answer: I'm 23, and I work in a bank.

5

- Why do you like him?
- How long have you been waiting?
- Did you like Kerry's new boyfriend?
- When did you meet your wife?
- How do you make that delicious spaghetti dish?
- Where are you from?
- How long have you known him?
- Did you meet her at university?

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Explaining who people are

6

1 a; 2 f; 3 g; 4 e; 5 b; 6 c; 7 h; 8 d

7

1 b; 2 b; 3 a; 4 b; 5 a; 6 b; 7 a; 8 a

LISTENING

8

1 c; 2 e; 3 b; 4 a; 5 d

9

Speaker 1 D; Speaker 2 A; Speaker 3 C

10

1 d; 2 b; 3 f; 4 a; 5 e; 6 c

GRAMMAR Similarities and contrasts

1

1 both;	5 Neither;
2 whereas/but;	6 None, all;
3 both, neither;	7 whereas/but;
4 All;	8 whereas/but

2

1 All;	6 whereas/but;
2 Both;	7 neither;
3 but/whereas;	8 neither;
4 but;	9 all;
5 both;	10 None

VOCABULARY Character and habits

3

1 c;	2 l;	3 i;	4 g;	5 k;	6 j;
7 b;	8 e;	9 a;	10 f;	11 h;	12 d

4

1 strict;	3 determined;	5 calm;
2 practical;	4 friendly;	6 patient

5

1 bright;	3 soft;	5 fit;
2 open;	4 confident;	6 organised

READING

6

1 c; 2 a; 3 b; 4 b

7

1 F; 2 T; 3 F; 4 F; 5 T; 6 F

8

1 keeps;	3 paints;	5 plays;
2 human;	4 spend;	6 family

LISTENING

1

Example answers:

Similarities: They both like swimming and going to the cinema.
Differences: Jill is tall and slim, whereas Paul is short and overweight; Jill goes out a lot and does sport, but Paul stays at home and plays on his computer.

VOCABULARY Words with the same verb and noun forms

6

1 update;	7 post;
2 quote;	8 commented;
3 emailed;	9 comments;
4 streams;	10 email;
5 updates;	11 quoted;
6 stream;	12 posted

DEVELOPING WRITING An email – a character reference

7

- 1 Two years;
- 2 kind, caring, calm, and a good student;
- 3 plays tennis, reads books, and watches films

8

- 1 Dear
- 2 Thank you for;
- 3 also;
- 4 In her spare time;
- 5 I am sure;
- 6 any more information

9

- 1 B;
- 2 F;
- 3 C;
- 4 A;
- 5 D;
- 6 E

10

Example answer:

From: Peter North

To: Mrs Mojewski

Subject: Reference for Rashid Kirijian

Dear Mrs Mojewski,

Thank you your letter, asking me about my student, Rashid Kirijian.

I have known Rashid for two years. He is clever and hardworking, friendly and polite. He is good at Polish, and wants to practise speaking the language, as he is hoping to be a translator. In his spare time, Rashid likes playing basketball and swimming. He plays in a water polo team three times a week.

I think you will find him to be good company. I hope you enjoy your time together!

Please write back to me if you need any more information or have any questions.

Yours sincerely,
Peter North

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 6

1

- 1 cousin;
- 2 liberal;
- 3 remove;
- 4 ignore;
- 5 attitude

2

- 1 neighbourhood;
- 2 traditional;
- 3 comparison;
- 4 inspiration;
- 5 supportive;
- 6 inappropriate;
- 7 performance;
- 8 succeed

3

- 1 married;
- 2 to know;
- 3 frustrated;
- 4 on with;
- 5 divorced

4

- 1 between;
- 2 to;
- 3 of;
- 4 over;
- 5 for;
- 6 in;
- 7 out

UNIT 07

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Explaining where places are

1

- 1 So where are you from?
- 2 Really? Whereabouts?
- 3 Where's it near?
- 4 So what's it like?
- 5 How big is it?
- 6 What do you like most about living there?
- 7 Have you always lived there?
- 8 And is there anything you don't like about it?

VOCABULARY Describing places

2

- 1 plant;
- 2 square;
- 3 area;
- 4 system;
- 5 coast;
- 6 bank;
- 7 culture;
- 8 climate

3

- 1 industrial;
- 2 historic;
- 3 rural;
- 4 parks;
- 5 beach;
- 6 24-hour culture;
- 7 bank;
- 8 factories;
- 9 murders;
- 10 desert

PRONUNCIATION /s/ or /z/?

4

- 1 desert /z/
- 2 industrial /s/
- 3 historic /s/
- 4 factories /z/
- 5 square /s/
- 6 coast /s/
- 7 system /s/
- 8 museum /z/
- 9 forest /s/
- 10 bars /z/
- 11 boats /s/
- 12 place /s/
- 13 circle /s/
- 14 dangerous /s/

READING

5

- 1 B;
- 2 C;
- 3 A

6

- 1 C;
- 2 A;
- 3 C;
- 4 B;
- 5 A;
- 6 A

VOCABULARY Where I live

1

- 1 an old people's home, a good reputation, people with respect;
- 2 army base, military service, at war with;
- 3 studio flat, not much space, tiny;
- 4 a block of flats, take the lift, have a great view;
- 5 a hall of residence, my own sink, noisy students;
- 6 a shared house, split the bills, take turns

GRAMMAR have to, don't have to, can and can't

2

- 1 can;
- 2 doesn't have to;
- 3 can;
- 4 don't have to;
- 5 don't have to;
- 6 have to;
- 7 don't have to;
- 8 can't

3

- 1 have to;
- 2 don't have to;
- 3 can;
- 4 can;
- 5 have to;
- 6 can't;
- 7 can;
- 8 have to;
- 9 have to

LISTENING

4

c

5

- 1, 2, 4, 5

6

- 1 T;
- 2 T;
- 3 F;
- 4 T;
- 5 T;
- 6 F;
- 7 T;
- 8 F

DEVELOPING WRITING

A letter - describing where you live

7

c

8

- 1 C;
- 2 D;
- 3 A;
- 4 B

9

- 1 Because he has just found somewhere to live.
- 2 In a small room in a family house in Portsmouth.
- 3 It's near to the university and the beach.
- 4 A bed, a desk and a chair.
- 5 A TV.
- 6 Because the family has small children who go to bed early.
- 7 He can't invite guests to his room during the week.
- 8 The rent is very cheap.

10

- 1 F; 2 T; 3 F; 4 T; 5 F; 6 T

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Asking for permission

1

- 1 mind if I borrow your umbrella?
- 2 OK if I switch on the TV?
- 3 mind if I use your computer?
- 4 OK if I take some food from the fridge?
- 5 mind if I invite a friend to stay tonight?
- 6 OK if I borrow your phone to make a quick call?

2

- 1 a; 2 a; 3 b; 4 a; 5 b; 6 b

3

Suggested answers:

- 1 you mind if I;
- 2 actually, I'd rather you didn't;
- 3 it OK if;
- 4 of course;
- 5 help yourself / feel free;
- 6 help yourself / feel free

GRAMMAR will / won't

4

- 1 I won't do it again.
- 2 I'll pay you back.
- 3 I'll pick you up in the car.
- 4 I'll get it.
- 5 I'll look into it.
- 6 I won't be able to.
- 7 I'll carry them for you.
- 8 I'll see who it is.

5

- 1 P; 5 IR;
- 2 O; 6 IR;
- 3 O, IR; 7 O;
- 4 IR; 8 IR

5

- 1 'll; 4 won't;
- 2 'll; 5 'll;
- 3 'll; 6 won't;

VOCABULARY Staying with people

- 1 d; 2 b; 3 a; 4 g; 5 h; 6 c;
7 f; 8 e

- 1 H; 2 G; 3 G; 4 G; 5 H; 6 H
7 G; 8 H

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 7

- 1 f; 2 c; 3 e; 4 a; 5 d; 6 b

2

- 1 home; 3 affect; 5 lend;
- 2 industrial; 4 banks; 6 historic

3

- 1 money; 4 base;
- 2 job; 5 with freedom;
- 3 takeaway; 6 a bank

4

- 1 T; 2 F; 3 T; 4 T; 5 F; 6 F; 7 T

UNIT 08

VOCABULARY Stages of education

1

- 1 A: Is your daughter still at primary school?
B: No she's fifteen now, so she goes to secondary school.
A: And what's her favourite subject?
B: Well, she's very good at sports so she loves PE.
- 2 A: So, Maxine, what do you do?
M: I'm studying graphic design at Middlesex university. I'm in my second year.
A: I thought you had a daughter.
M: Yes, I do. I got married as soon as I left school and Jodie was born the following year. I waited until she started nursery school, and then went back to my studies.
- 3 A: Are you going to university when you leave school?
B: Yes, if I get a place. But I don't want to go immediately, so I'll take a year out first.
A: Are you going to get a job?
B: Yes, but I want to do other things as well, so I'll work part time.
- 4 A: When are you going to graduate from university?
B: Well, I'm taking my finals in the summer, so it won't be long.
A: And what are you going to do after that?
B: If I get a good degree I'll stay at university and do a Master's.

2

- 1 BA; 2 BSc; 3 MA; 4 MSc; 5 PhD

3

subject	person
biology	<i>biologist</i>
chemistry	<i>chemist</i>
economics	<i>economist</i>
geography	<i>geographer</i>
history	<i>historian</i>
mathematics/maths	<i>mathematician</i>
philosophy	<i>philosopher</i>
physics	<i>physicist</i>
science	<i>scientist</i>
sociology	<i>sociologist</i>

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS No?

4

- 1 c; 2 b; 3 f; 4 e; 5 d; 6 a

LISTENING

5

b

6

I don't really like history.
 No. I'm interested in the future, not the past.
 I don't know why people study Latin.
 No. It's a dead language. Nobody speaks it.
 I can't see the point of IT classes.
 No. Everyone knows how to use a computer these days.

7

1 history, Latin and IT
 2 history and IT

GRAMMAR First conditionals

8

1 If you don't work harder, you won't pass your exams.
 2 They'll miss the train home if they're not quick.
 3 If you study law, you'll find it easy to get a good job.
 4 He'll reply to you if you send him an email.
 5 If the teacher doesn't arrive, we'll go home early.
 6 I'll lend you the book if you promise to give it back.

9

1 are, will be;	6 won't, don't;
2 will go, finishes;	7 miss, won't be able to;
3 don't see, will call;	8 won't be able, don't;
4 won't, don't;	9 plays, 'll come;
5 doesn't, will email;	10 will leave, arrives

VOCABULARY Education systems

1

1 g; 2 j; 3 i; 4 f; 5 d; 6 h;
 7 b; 8 a; 9 c; 10 e

2

1 private school;	7 resources;
2 fees;	8 textbooks;
3 grades;	9 compulsory;
4 universities;	10 tests;
5 fail;	11 behaviour;
6 traditional;	12 state school

3

1 h; 2 d; 3 f; 4 a; 5 b; 6 g; 7 c;
 8 e

GRAMMAR had to / could

4

1 She couldn't finish her assignment.
 2 He had to stay up all night to revise.
 3 She could do any sport she liked at school.
 4 They didn't have to do their homework.
 5 I couldn't find the book in the library.
 6 We had to complain about the teacher.
 7 Did you have to stay late after class?
 8 Could you understand the last question in the exam?
 9 He could go home early because he had finished his work.
 10 Did they have to buy their textbooks?

5

The parents' evening was a complete disaster. We *had to* start late because lots of the parents were stuck in a traffic jam and *couldn't* get to the school on time. Then, there weren't enough chairs in the school hall, so lots of people *had to* stand. Finally, the microphone didn't work, so the audience *couldn't* hear anything. Still, at least we *didn't have to* listen to the headmaster's speech. He's always so boring!

READING

6

c

7

1 consistently above average
 2 stimulating and challenging environment
 3 outstanding musical tradition
 4 thriving multinational community
 5 excellent modern facilities
 6 high academic standards

8

1 F; 2 F; 3 T; 4 F; 5 T; 6 F;
 7 T; 8 T; 9 F; 10 F

VOCABULARY Cheating

1

1 pretended; 3 claimed;
 2 cheated; 4 lied

2

1 lied;	5 got stuck, complete;
2 resign;	6 claimed, checked;
3 declare, earned;	7 take, improve;
4 pretended;	8 ordered

3

1 e; 2 g; 3 i; 4 c; 5 a; 6 h;
 7 b; 8 f; 9 d

PRONUNCIATION Sound and spelling

4

1 chemistry 2 check 3 teacher

DEVELOPING WRITING A report – giving advice

5

1 Year; 4 contributions;
 2 62%; 5 more
 3 course work;

6

Model answer:

You have made some progress in Year 2 of your history course. Although your exam mark of 59% was disappointing, your contributions in class have been good. However, your course work has been poor. If you work harder, you will do much better next year.

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 8

1

1 in; 3 into; 5 on;
 2 off; 4 with; 6 under

2

1 Technological; 3 textbooks; 5 value;
 2 impatient; 4 retake; 6 qualification

3

1 offer; 3 claimed; 5 declares; 7 challenged
 2 resign; 4 tempted; 6 set;

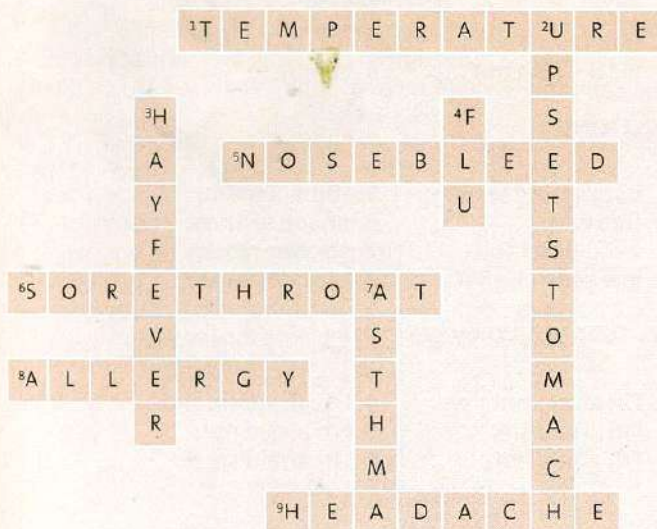
4

1 d; 2 e; 3 a; 4 f; 5 c; 6 b

UNIT 09

VOCABULARY Illnesses and health problems

1



2

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1 water; | 5 aches; |
| 2 swallow; | 6 last; |
| 3 sweating; | 7 concentrate; |
| 4 sneezing; | 8 cough |

GRAMMAR

Giving advice (*should, ought to, why don't*)

3

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1 should; | 5 should; |
| 2 why don't you; | 6 why don't you; |
| 3 you ought to; | 7 should; |
| 4 should; | 8 you ought to |

4

- 1 I *don't* think you should ...;
- 2 Maybe you should *put* ...;
- 3 ... He *ought to* stop ...;
- 4 Why *don't* you ...;
- 5 You *ought to* stay ...;
- 6 You *oughtn't to / shouldn't* eat ...

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Common questions about illness

5

- 1 Are you OK?
- 2 Have you been to the doctor's about it?
- 3 Are you taking anything for it?
- 4 Have you been to the doctor's about it?
- 5 Are you OK?
- 6 Are you taking anything for it?

6

- 1 e; 2 d; 3 f; 4 b; 5 a; 6 c

LISTENING

7

- 1 He has a headache and sore throat.
- 2 She feels dizzy and weak (because she hasn't eaten).

8

- 1 You should go to the doctor; take some throat sweets.
- 2 You should sit down; you ought to go to see the nurse.

9

He tells her to eat something.

10

- 1 b; 2 a

LISTENING

1

- 1 b; 2 c; 3 b; 4 a

3

1, 4, 6

4

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 school; | 4 an actress; |
| 2 read and write; | 5 speeches/talks |
| 3 type; | |

VOCABULARY Phrases with *mind* and *matter*

5

- 1 What's the matter, I've got a lot on my mind;
- 2 would you mind;
- 3 you don't mind. I don't mind;
- 4 To make matters worse, Never mind, That's a matter of opinion;
- 5 It doesn't matter;
- 6 It's a question of mind over matter

6

- 1 f; 2 i; 3 d; 4 a; 5 g; 6 c

PRONUNCIATION

7

unbelievable	musical	enjoyable
industrial	reliable	physical

DEVELOPING WRITING A webpage – fundraising

8

- 1 Different Strokes
- 2 Her son had a stroke when he was small, and Different Strokes helped them.
- 3 She's going to take part in the London to Paris Cycle Ride.
- 4 She's hoping to raise €2,000.

9

- 1 e; 2 a; 3 c; 4 f; 5 d; 6 b

10

Example answer:

Target: £5,000

Raised so far: £1,140

Donate now!

My Story

In 2005, I had a car accident and suffered a bad head injury. Afterwards I discovered that I could not speak. The medical name for this is aphasia. I suffered from this for two years. During this time, I received a lot of help and support from Speakability. Their speech therapists helped me to speak again. I decided that I wanted to help other people with this problem. I'm going to walk from Edinburgh to Brighton next month to raise money to help fund training for Speakability's speech therapists. Thank you for your support.

VOCABULARY Parts of the body

1

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1 legs; | 5 lips; |
| 2 face; | 6 ear; |
| 3 finger; | 7 stomach; |
| 4 hair; | 8 feet |

2

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 eye hair; | 4 back arm; |
| 2 yellow hair; | 5 mouth pain |
| 3 armstand; | |

GRAMMAR Imperatives

3

- | | | | |
|---------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 call; | 3 Don't leave; | 5 Don't take; | 7 Drink; |
| 2 put; | 4 eat; | 6 Let; | 8 Don't touch |

4

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1 f; | 2 d; | 3 b; | 4 d; | 5 c; |
| 6 e; | 7 a; | 8 c | | |

5

Example answers:

- Take these painkillers three times a day.
- Go to bed and rest.
- Don't eat so many sweets. Eat more fruit.
- Drink hot drinks and fruit juice.
- Stay at home and put on this cream twice a day.

READING

6

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 1 hydrotherapy; | 3 nutrition |
| 2 aromatherapy; | |

7

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|-------------|
| 1 rub; | 3 gargle; | 5 burn; | 7 symptoms; |
| 2 radiator; | 4 remedy; | 6 steam; | 8 virus |

8

- | | | | | |
|------|---------|------|---------|-----|
| 1 a; | 2 b, c; | 3 b; | 4 a, c; | 5 a |
|------|---------|------|---------|-----|

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 9

1

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 anxious; | 5 cultural; |
| 2 acceptable; | 6 depressed; |
| 3 disabled; | 7 generous |
| 4 religious; | |

2

- I've got an upset stomach;
- Take a deep breath;
- She's made a speedy recovery from the flu;
- He broke out in a rash after touching the cat;
- I lost my voice after shouting so much at the match.

3

- | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|-----|
| 1 T; | 2 F; | 3 T; | 4 F; | 5 F; | 6 T; | 7 F |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|-----|

4

- | | | |
|--------------|------------|---------------|
| 1 put on an; | 3 wise; | 5 back; |
| 2 throat; | 4 bite my; | 6 suffer from |

UNIT 10**VOCABULARY Places to stay**

1

babysitting service; basic furniture; free wi-fi; heated pool; including breakfast; low season; provided meals; put up the tent; real fire; reduced rate; share a room; shower block

2

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 furniture, breakfast; | 4 rate, season; |
| 2 the tent, block; | 5 fire, meals; |
| 3 pool, service; | 6 a room, wi-fi |

3

Students should circle:

- | | | |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1 low; | 3 tent; | 5 free; |
| 2 price; | 4 leave; | 6 campsite |

4

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1 hotel; | 3 pic A – hostel; |
| 2 pic B – apartment; | 4 campsite |

LISTENING

5

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------|
| 1 babysitting service; | 5 share a room; |
| 2 free wi-fi; | 6 online forums; |
| 3 fixed timetable; | 7 shower block; |
| 4 low season; | 8 provides meals |

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Apologising

6

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1 I'm afraid not; | 4 I'm afraid so; |
| 2 I'm afraid so; | 5 I'm afraid not; |
| 3 I'm afraid not; | 6 I'm afraid so |

7

- I'm afraid we don't accept credit cards, but you can pay by cheque.
- I'm afraid we're fully booked until the end of the month.
- I'm afraid you'll have to park in the car park down the road.
- I'm afraid so. There's a wedding party tomorrow evening and all the guests are staying in the hotel.
- I'm afraid not. It is currently closed for repairs.
- I'm afraid not. We don't have enough staff to offer that service.

DEVELOPING WRITING An online booking form

8

- Jorg Oskarsson;
- Applecote Guest House;
- four (two adults, two children);
- 2 September 2010;
- eight nights;
- yes – son's 16th birthday;
- yes – £10 per night for the one child under 12;
- no

9

- | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1 g; | 2 a; | 3 d; | 4 f; | 5 b; | 6 h; |
| 7 e; | 8 c | | | | |

VOCABULARY Solving hotel problems

1

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 get the jacuzzi to work; | 6 noise outside; |
| 2 boiling; | 7 an upset stomach; |
| 3 free for sightseeing; | 8 more expensive than I expected; |
| 4 no record; | 9 before you serve breakfast; |
| 5 an early flight; | 10 no toothbrush or toothpaste |

2

- | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|-------|------|------|------|
| a 8; | b 2; | c 6; | d 10; | e 5; | f 1; | g 7; |
| h 9; | i 3; | j 4 | | | | |

GRAMMAR Second conditionals

3

- If I were you, I'd book a room first. / I'd book a room first if I were you.
- If it happened to you, what would you do? / What would you do if it happened to you?
- It would be better if you went home.
- He might listen to you if you called him. / If you called him, he might listen to you.
- Do you think it would be better if we left?

- 4
- 1 What would you do if there was no hot water in your hotel bathroom?
 - 2 If I asked you to marry me, what would you say?
 - 3 Would you complain if it happened to you?
 - 4 If I ordered breakfast in my room, how much would it cost?
 - 5 Would you think I was crazy if I bought that hotel?
 - 6 Would you know what to do if you were on your own?

5

Answers may vary. Possible answers:

- 1 If I were you, I'd complain to the chef.
- 2 If I were you, I'd ask the maid.
- 3 If I were you, I'd search on the Internet.
- 4 If I were you, I'd complain to the head waiter.
- 5 If I were you, I'd tell the manager.
- 6 If I were you, I'd ask for a refund.

LISTENING

6

- 1 2; 2 3; 3 1

7

- 1 3; 2 1; 3 2

8

- 1 turn down;
- 2 find;
- 3 put his coat over it;
- 4 the main speaker;
- 5 wedding anniversary;
- 6 roses

9

- 1 I would get her some perfume.
- 2 I would call the hotel manager.
- 3 I would change room.
- 4 I would ask room service to call a plumber.
- 5 I would ask the receptionist to call and explain that there's a problem.
- 6 I would ask the receptionist to recommend a restaurant.

10

W: Hurry up, Henri! We're going to be late!

M: Just a minute. I'm nearly ready ... Oh, wait, Cherise! I can't open the door!

W: What? OK! I'm coming. Give me two seconds ... Right! You pull, I'll push.

M: Wait. Just one second ... OK, ready!

W: Right. One, two, three ... go!

M: Aaagh! ... It's no good! It won't move!

W: OK, I'll phone reception for help. I won't be a minute ... It's all right, Henri. They'll send someone up in a minute. Be patient.

READING

1

c

2

- 1 c; 2 b; 3 c; 4 c; 5 a

PRONUNCIATION

3

/ju:/	/ʌ/
used to	umbrella
usually	uninteresting
useful	summer
beautiful	suntan
cute	done

GRAMMAR *used to*

7

- 1 a, b, d; 2 c

8

- 1 When I was young, I used to walk to school every day.
- 2 When I was a kid, I never used to go on holiday with my parents, so now family holidays are special to me.
- 3 We used to go to North Wales every summer, until I went to university.
- 4 My dad used to go fishing with his friend every morning.
- 5 We used to stay in the same place every year, so we made lots of friends there.
- 6 I used to swim in the sea every day of the holidays.

9

- 1 I **never used** to like singing round camp fires, but I do now.
- 3 We **used** to like going to the outdoor swimming pool.
- 4 When I was at school, we **used to** go on skiing trips every February.
- 6 Last weekend, I **had** to get up early for a hockey tournament.
- 8 Rob **used to go** to summer camp every August.

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 10

1

- 1 climbing;
- 2 entertainment;
- 3 arrangement;
- 4 babysitting;
- 5 Parking;
- 6 achievement

2

- 1 e; 2 a; 3 g; 4 c; 5 b; 6 d; 7 f

3

- 1 T; 2 T; 3 F; 4 F; 5 T; 6 F

4

- 1 take;
- 2 warn;
- 3 send;
- 4 turn;
- 5 climbed;
- 6 messed

UNIT 11

VOCABULARY Science and nature

1

- 1 e; 2 f; 3 a; 4 c; 5 d; 6 b

2

- 1 find;
- 2 spread;
- 3 become;
- 4 fund;
- 5 hit;
- 6 building;
- 7 launched;
- 8 investigate;
- 9 ban;
- 10 conduct

3

- 1 product;
- 2 smoking;
- 3 research;
- 4 experiments;
- 5 extinct;
- 6 diseases;
- 7 effect;
- 8 cure;
- 9 coast;
- 10 science block

LISTENING

4

Emily Cummins 2; Tommy Jones 3; weather forecast 1

5

- 1 b; 2 b; 3 b; 4 b; 5 a; 6 a

6

- 1 flooding; 3 invented; 5 recycled;
2 puppy; 4 shed; 6 energy

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Responding to news and comments

7

Suggested answers:

- 1 Really? That's great news / fantastic / wonderful!
2 No change
3 No change
4 Really? That's good news / great / really good.
Yes, I know. It's really good.
5 Definitely / Absolutely.
6 No change
7 Good idea.
8 Really? That's interesting.

8

- 1 Really? That's amazing!
2 They should do more
3 No. So is it going to snow?
4 Really? That's awful!
5 Maybe we should

PRONUNCIATION Word stress

9

population – 4 syllables

research – 2 syllables

invent – 2 syllables

experiment – 4 syllables

pollution – 3 syllables

energy – 3 syllables

10

2 syllables, stress on first syllable	2 syllables, stress on second syllable	3 syllables, stress on first syllable	3 syllables, stress on second syllable	4 syllables, stress on second syllable	4 syllables, stress on third syllable
study shortage research* natural*	extinct explore invent protect research*	energy natural*	solution pollution resources	experiment investigate participant	population

* both pronunciations are acceptable

VOCABULARY Animals

1

pets	farm animals	marine animals	birds	wild cats
dog cat rabbit horse parrot	sheep hen cow rabbit horse	shark dolphin whale	eagle parrot pigeon	lion tiger panther

2

- 1 ground;
2 dogs;
3 excited;
4 less;
5 success;
6 school;
7 workers;
8 bones

READING

3

	magnetic fridge	methane farming	green machine	floating wind turbines
air pollution		✓		✓
water shortage			✓	
energy resources	✓	✓	✓	✓

4

- 1 a, c; 2 b, d; 3 c; 4 b, d; 5 c (washes and dries)

5

- 1 d; 2 e; 3 b; 4 c; 5 a

GRAMMAR Past perfect simple

6

- 1 checked, called; 4 looked at, had discovered;
2 had followed, realised; 5 had fallen, got home
3 had already finished, told;

7

- 1 had finished; 4 had forgotten; 7 had forgotten;
2 had been hit; 5 had not been; 8 had discovered
3 had never been; 6 had already left;

8

- 1 lived; 3 discovered; 5 had died;
2 existed; 4 had looked; 6 had eaten

GRAMMAR Passives

1

- 1 The first earthship was developed by Michael Reynolds in the 1970s;
2 Earthships can be built from available recycled materials;
3 Worn out car tyres are used to build the external walls;
4 The tyres are filled with rammed earth to make the walls;
5 The first earthship was built in the UK in Fife, in Scotland;
6 Could glass bottles be used to build walls?;
7 Can the earthships be heated naturally?;
8 The buildings are heated with solar panels

2

- 1 a; 2 a; 3 a; 4 b; 5 b; 6 a;
7 b; 8 a

DEVELOPING WRITING

An email – expressing an opinion

3

- 1 d; 2 e; 3 c; 4 a; 5 b

4

- 1 One thing; 3 but; 5 However;
2 Secondly; 4 Another; 6 Although

5

Answers may vary slightly. Suggested answers:

- 1 *Although* I like most animals, I don't like rats.
2 *Although* more homes are needed in the city centre, there should be parks.
3 Paris is a beautiful city, with wide streets. *Another thing* I like are the cafés on street corners with tables outside.
4 It's a good thing that governments are talking about climate change, *but* they should do more.
5 *Although* I like living by the sea, it gets cold in the winter.
6 I like sweets but they're not healthy.

VOCABULARY Reporting crimes

- 3
- | | | |
|--------------------|------------|-------------|
| 1 came; | 7 making; | 13 stole |
| 2 kicked; | 8 grabbed; | 14 follow; |
| 3 threatening; | 9 ran; | 15 crashed; |
| 4 hitting/kicking; | 10 bought; | 16 texting |
| 5 kicking/hitting; | 11 got; | |
| 6 having; | 12 hacked; | |

LISTENING

- 4
- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 a bank; | 4 three; |
| 2 four; | 5 four; |
| 3 check your bank balance; | 6 approximately 12 minutes |

- 5
- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 a new account; | 4 training purposes; |
| 2 is important; | 5 high volume of; |
| 3 will be available; | 6 more convenient |

GRAMMAR Reporting speech

- 6
- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 were helping; | 4 were going; |
| 2 hadn't seen; | 5 had seen; |
| 3 had phoned; | 6 hadn't heard |

- 7
- 1 She said Anna had posted the letter on Tuesday.
 - 2 You said you were sending me the books today.
 - 3 You said you hadn't been to the office all day.
 - 4 You said you hadn't brought your notes with you.
 - 5 They told us they hadn't delivered the letters yet.
 - 6 You said you were going to the post office right now.

- 8
1 said 3 told 5 told/asked
2 asked 4 asked 6 said

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 12

- 1**
1 d; 2 a; 3 f; 4 b; 5 c; 6 e

- 2
1 coverage; 3 resend; 5 unexpected;
2 inconvenient; 4 irrational; 6 initially

- 3**
1 T; 2 F; 3 F; 4 T; 5 F; 6 T;
7 F; 8 T

- 4
1 transfer;
2 campaign;
3 continuously;
4 relatively;
5 threatening

UNIT 13

VOCABULARY

- [illegible]

- 2**
- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 a horror; | 3 past; | 5 martial arts; |
| 2 special effects; | 4 predictable; | 6 romantic |

- 3**
1 A; 2 C; 3 A; 4 B; 5 A; 6 B;
7 B; 8 C

LISTENING

- 4**
1 c; 2 a; 3 b

- 6**
1 C; 2 A; 3 B; 4 C; 5 B; 6 A

- 7** 1 T; 2 F; 3 F; 4 T; 5 T; 6 F

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS *supposed to*

- 8** 1 d; 2 a; 3 e; 4 f; 5 b; 6 c

- 9
- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 What are you doing; | 5 amazing; |
| 2 Would you like; | 6 Why don't you; |
| 3 is supposed to; | 7 are supposed to; |
| 4 really talented; | 8 do you fancy |

GRAMMAR -ed / -ing adjectives

- 10**
- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1 bored; | 5 disappointing; |
| 2 interesting; | 6 annoying; |
| 3 excited; | 7 tiring; |
| 4 shocked; | 8 confused |

- 11**
- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1 annoying; | 3 worried; | 5 boring; |
| 2 surprised; | 4 disgusting; | 6 amazing |

GRAMMAR Noun phrases

- 1**
- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 film cameraman; | 4 photo of my family; |
| 2 fashion industry; | 5 works of art; |
| 3 film director; | 6 cinema audience |

- 2**
- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1 film cameraman; | 3 works of art; |
| 2 cinema audience; | 4 film director |

- 3**
- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 fashion industry; | 4 cinema audiences; |
| 2 film director; | 5 photo of my family; |
| 3 works of art; | 6 film cameraman |

- 4**
1 b; 2 a; 3 a; 4 b; 5 b; 6 a;
7 a; 8 b; 9 b; 10 b

PRONUNCIATION -ed

- | /ɪd/ | /ɪd/ |
|--------------|-----------|
| excited | bored |
| disappointed | tired |
| interested | starred |
| treated | amazed |
| directed | played |
| recorded | surprised |

READING

8

1 B; 2 C; 3 A

9

1 B; 2 A; 3 B,C; 4 A; 5 B,C; 6 C

10

adjective	verb
moving	move
exciting	excite
disappointing	disappoint
amazing	amaze
shocking	shock
surprising	surprise
upsetting	upset

VOCABULARY Music, art and books

1

- 1 instruments; 9 landscape;
 2 composer; 10 paintings;
 3 albums; 11 novel;
 4 concert; 12 comedy;
 5 singer; 13 crime fiction;
 6 portrait photographer; 14 authors;
 7 sculptures; 15 poetry
 8 exhibition;

GRAMMAR Present perfect continuous

2

1 for; 2 for; 3 since; 4 since; 5 for; 6 for

3

- 1 been acting, starred;
 2 directed, been working;
 3 started, has held;
 4 has been playing, has had;
 5 known, have been going;
 6 become, published

4

- 1 has been playing; 3 has recorded; 5 has been
 2 has gained; 4 has worked; touring

DEVELOPING WRITING Blog entry – a book review

5

- 1 moving; 2 interested; 3 surprising

6

- 1 c; 2 a; 3 b

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 13

1

- 1 in; 3 of; 5 in
 2 on; 4 at;

2

- 1 composers; 4 explosion; 7 wealthy;
 2 social; 5 leading; 8 conductor
 3 unpredictable; 6 director;

3

- 1 rehearsing; 3 Festival; 5 depressing;
 2 promote; 4 talent; 6 source

4

- 1 e; 2 a; 3 f; 4 b; 5 d; 6 c

UNIT 14

VOCABULARY Things in the house

1



2

- 1 mop and bucket, a; 3 dustpan and brush, d;
 2 needle and thread, c; 4 hammer and nails, b

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Explaining where things are

3

- 1 A: Can I borrow a hairdryer?
 B: There's one on the bathroom wall.
 2 A: Where do you keep the plasters?
 B: There's a first aid kit in the kitchen cupboard.
 3 A: Have you got any snacks?
 B: Yes, there are some in the fridge.
 4 A: Have you got a needle and thread?
 B: There's a sewing box on the shelf.
 5 A: Can I make a drink?
 B: Yes, the coffee is on the shelf.
 6 A: Have you got today's paper?
 B: It's on the table by the TV.

4

- 1 next; 3 at; 5 under; 7 on;
 2 in; 4 on; 6 in; 8 in

GRAMMAR Relative clauses

5

- 1 where you can get fit;
 2 who prepares food in a restaurant;
 3 which cleans carpets;
 4 who make things from wood;
 5 where you can watch the latest movies;
 6 which helps you to get dry;
 7 where people race horses;
 8 which hold water

6

- 1 who; 3 who; 5 who; 7 who;
 2 where; 4 when; 6 where; 8 when

7

- 1 which; 3 who; 5 which
 2 which; 4 who;

LISTENING

8

The following should be ticked:
Clean carpets in lobby; Clean marble floor in dining room; Wipe mirrors; Put up picture

9 & 10

- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1 A vacuum cleaner | Under the stairs |
| 2 A mop and a bucket | In the cupboard behind the reception area |
| 3 A cloth | In the drawer in the staff room |
| 4 A hammer and some nails | In the cellar |

11

A torch

VOCABULARY Containers

1

- | | | |
|------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1 shampoo; | 4 butter; | 7 crisps; |
| 2 bread; | 5 cheese; | 8 eggs |
| 3 fish; | 6 sausages; | |

2

- 1 e; 2 c; 3 b; 4 d; 5 a; 6 f

READING

3

b

4

- In an empty shop in Oxford Street, London;
- 10;
- 7,227;
- Break Down*;
- consumer society;
- his cat;
- He felt an incredible sense of freedom;
- He has become one of the most respected artists in the UK.

5

- 1 T; 2 F; 3 F; 4 F; 5 T; 6 F

6

- Why do you think that?
- It was so wasteful!
- I think he made a good point.
- We all have too many possessions these days.
- But he could have given them to charity.
- You're always going shopping.

GRAMMAR must, mustn't

7

- 1 c; 2 b; 3 a

8

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 You must; | 6 You must; |
| 2 You mustn't; | 7 You don't have to; |
| 3 You must; | 8 You don't have to; |
| 4 You mustn't; | 9 You mustn't; |
| 5 You don't have to; | 10 You mustn't |

GRAMMAR Verbs with two objects

1

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| 1 for; | 3 to; | 5 to; | 7 to; |
| 2 to; | 4 for; | 6 to; | 8 for |

2

- He gave me the books.
- I bought a cup of coffee for you.
- He poured me a glass of milk.
- I sent a postcard to you.
- She made me a sandwich.
- He read the report to them.
- They lent us their car.
- We cooked them dinner.

PRONUNCIATION /g/ and /k/, /b/ and /p/

3

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 1 class; | 6 could; |
| 2 ban; | 7 ban; |
| 3 bin; | 8 pad; |
| 4 pair; | 9 goal; |
| 5 gold; | 10 pouring |

LISTENING

4

- 1 T; 2 T; 3 F; 4 T; 5 T; 6 F

WRITING

5

- a 3 b 4 c 1 d 2

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 14

1

- | | | |
|---------|----------|------------|
| 1 rid; | 3 sack; | 5 spilt; |
| 2 clue; | 4 shame; | 6 consumed |

2

- 1 T; 2 F; 3 F; 4 T; 5 T; 6 F; 7 F

3

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1 reduction | 3 consumers; | 5 in efficient |
| 2 guilty; | 4 dispose; | 6 recycling |

4

- | | | |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|
| 1 clue; | 3 exhausted; | 5 jam; |
| 2 petrol; | 4 soap; | 6 plaster |

UNIT 15

VOCABULARY The economy and money

1

C	O	T	D	E	R	U	K	A	E	W	N	P	U
X	Y	O	O	A	O	N	I	D	Q	W	X	Y	L
W	C	L	C	B	T	E	S	C	E	T	N	T	E
T	N	L	X	T	I	M	E	O	F	F	P	I	V
A	E	U	I	Y	N	P	K	S	A	L	A	R	Y
S	R	E	N	A	W	L	Z	T	M	H	J	U	T
Z	R	T	F	I	Q	O	V	O	I	C	E	C	R
Q	U	A	L	I	T	Y	O	F	L	I	F	E	O
S	C	M	A	K	L	M	B	L	Y	A	R	S	P
T	R	I	T	E	U	E	M	I	R	C	H	B	S
Y	P	L	I	C	I	N	Z	V	Q	D	U	O	N
P	W	C	O	I	W	T	P	I	Y	F	G	J	A
U	L	O	N	S	T	R	O	N	G	G	O	W	R
Q	I	M	A	V	E	R	A	G	E	R	S	A	T

2

- 1 unemployment; 4 quality of life; 7 inflation;
 2 pace of life; 5 climate change; 8 salary
 3 job security; 6 weak;

LISTENING

3

- 1 Yes, she does.
 2 It's doing better than before.
 3 She and Miguel want to get married, and she wants him to try living in Prague for a while so that he can understand her culture.

4

- 1 higher; 3 cheaper; 5 higher;
 2 lower; 4 expensive; 6 happier

5

1, 3, 4, 6

GRAMMAR Time phrases and tense

6

- 1 e; 2 f; 3 a; 4 b; 5 g; 6 h;
 7 d; 8 c

7

- 1 The government used to spend more on education in the past.
 2 Yesterday they opened a new shopping centre on the ring road.
 3 She's going to start a new job in advertising next week.
 4 He's had three jobs in the last two years.
 5 The economy is improving at the moment.
 6 She's had three loans from the bank in the last five years.

8

- 1 Unemployment has risen over the last few months.
 2 The average salary used to be higher when I was at school.
 3 Inflation has fallen since last year.
 4 The price of petrol has risen again in the last few weeks.
 5 The cost of living is falling at the moment, and prices are lower.
 6 I think the economy will improve next year.

DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS Comparing prices

9

- 1 cheaper; 4 cheaper;
 2 cheaper than (it is); 5 the same;
 3 more expensive; 6 slightly lower

10

- 1 they cost €300,000 in Faroland.
 2 it costs €20,000 in Celtonia.
 3 whereas it costs €1 in Celtonia.
 4 whereas they cost €1,000 in Faroland.

READING

1

- 1 an Economics teacher at university
 2 the Grameen Bank.
 3 the Nobel Peace prize.

2

- 1 F; 2 T; 3 T; 4 T; 5 F; 6 T;
 7 T; 8 F

3

- 1 interest; 3 micro-credit; 5 borrowed;
 2 lend; 4 pay back; 6 loan

VOCABULARY Money verbs

4

- 1 owed; 3 won; 5 left; 7 lose;
 2 borrowed; 4 gave; 6 save; 8 plays

5

- 1 credit card; 3 back; 5 attention; 7 interest
 2 bill; 4 to do it; 6 paid;

LISTENING

6

- 1 paying bills online; 3 at first he is worried, then he likes it
 2 easy;

7

- 1 c; 2 a; 3 b; 4 a; 5 b; 6 b;
 7 c; 8 a

PRONUNCIATION

8

/aɪ/ bill; /əʊ/ owl; /aʊ/ through; /eɪ/ said

GRAMMAR Time clauses

1

- 1 I'll pay back the money I owe you as soon as I'm able to/ I can.
 2 Call me after you transfer the money. OK?
 3 I'll lend you the money until you get paid.
 5 When I find a job, I'm going to/I'll open a savings account.
 7 As soon as I get confirmation of payment, I'll let you know.
 8 When I have enough money, I'll buy a new car.

2

- 1 when; 3 until; 5 after;
 2 as soon as; 4 before; 6 as soon as

3

- 1 will cancel; 4 recovers; 7 take out, check;
 2 have; 5 won't invest, falls; 8 finish, will come
 3 won't fall; 6 win, will take;

VOCABULARY Dealing with banks

4

- 1 take out; 4 charge; 7 transfer;
 2 cancel; 5 make; 8 change
 3 open; 6 pay;

5

- 1 I will transfer some money to him/my brother.
 2 I will pay some money into my account.
 3 I will charge them some money/a fee for the translation.
 4 I will take out a mortgage.
 5 I will open an account.
 6 I will cancel my credit card.

DEVELOPING WRITING

Email – giving information and advice

6

- 1 cost of living; 3 cost; 5 expenses;
 2 pay; 4 charges; 6 spend

7

£170: rent/accommodation per week
 £13: lunches in the university canteen
 £210–220: minimum total spending per week

8

- 1 c; 2 a; 3 b

Marita

READING

4
3

5

- 500 *The first settlers arrived.*
 1778 *Captain Cook visited the islands.*
 1779 *Captain Cook was killed.*
 1805 *King Kamehameha established a monarchy.*
 1820 *Christian missionaries arrived.*
 1893 *American businessmen seized power in a revolution.*
 1898 *Hawaii became a territory of the USA.*
 1941 *Japan attacked Pearl Harbor.*
 1959 *Hawaii became the 50th state of the USA.*
 1961 *Barack Obama was born.*

GRAMMAR Articles

6

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1 the, -; | 5 -, the, the; |
| 2 The, -; | 6 The, the, the; |
| 3 -, the, -; | 7 -, the, -; |
| 4 A, -, the, a, a; | 8 a, -, a |

7

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 the civil war; | 6 a war, the Germany; |
| 2 the people, the refugees; | 7 the 2011, the 28,000; |
| 3 the oil; | 8 the power; |
| 4 the farming; | 9 the soldiers; |
| 5 the unfair taxation; | 10 the Queen Victoria |

8

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 1 the; | 8 -; |
| 2 the; | 9 -; |
| 3 -; | 10 A; |
| 4 the; | 11 the; |
| 5 The; | 12 the; |
| 6 a; | 13 the; |
| 7 the; | 14 the |

WRITING

1

The Normans sailed across the English Channel.
 The Normans established a camp.
 The Normans and the English fought a battle.
 King Harold was killed.
 William marched to London.
 William was crowned king.

2

- 1 1066 is the year that the Normans invaded Britain.
 2 William was the first in a line of kings and queens which includes Queen Elizabeth II.
 4 Meanwhile = at the same time as

LISTENING

4

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1 T; | 2 F; | 3 T; | 4 F; |
| 5 F; | 6 T; | 7 F; | 8 T |

GRAMMAR Verb patterns (-ing or infinitive with to)

5

- 1 I forgot to post the letter. I remember telling her to go home early.
 2 He spent two weeks doing nothing. She decided to review all the work.
 3 They hated going to the theatre. They persuaded us to play tennis.
 4 I'd like to help my parents with their business. I don't feel like watching TV this evening.
 5 She loved taking her brother to school. She asked me to help with her assignment.
 6 Her new boss offered to help her sort out the accounts. The new job stopped her spending so much time at home.

6

- 1 Yes. I hate taking the bus.
 2 No. I stopped smoking last year.
 3 I'd like to go to Hawaii.
 4 No, thanks. I feel like watching TV at home.
 5 Because I forgot to pay my bill.
 6 I remember seeing my brother's face.
 7 I spent a year working for my father's business.
 8 Yes. I managed to speak to her yesterday.

VOCABULARY BUILDER QUIZ 16

1

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1 settled; | 4 unique; |
| 2 converted; | 5 ceremony; |
| 3 venue; | 6 independent |

2

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1 impressive; | 4 economic; |
| 2 religious; | 5 leader; |
| 3 shortage; | 6 persuade |

3

- 1 F; 2 T; 3 F; 4 F; 5 T; 6 T; 7 T

4

- | | |
|-----------|---------------|
| 1 colony; | 4 rule; |
| 2 parade; | 5 bowl; |
| 3 region; | 6 agriculture |

FACT FILE for page 12, Exercise 3

- Globally, we now buy 22% of everything we need online.
- Most online shopping happens between eight and nine in the evening.
- 55% of us use a laptop to do our online shopping, while 20% use a smartphone.
- 29% of us sometimes buy things online while we are at work.
- 25% of what we spend online goes on books, music and software.
- Women return more than 20% of the clothes they buy online, men return less than 10%.
- Men spend 20–30% more money than women online.
- Online sales are increasing all the time, but in the UK over 10,000 shops close every year.

TRACKLIST

CD1		
TRACK	ITEM	
1	titles	
2	1.1	Part 1
3	1.2	Part 2
4	1.3	
5	1.4	
6	2.1	
7	2.2	
8	3.1	
9	3.2	
10	3.3	
11	3.4	Part 1
12	3.5	Part 2
13	4.1	Part 1
14	4.2	Part 2
15	4.3	
16	4.4	
17	5.1	
18	5.2	
19	6.1	1 Balbur Wahidi
20		2 Joe Allbright
21		3 Carrie Hutton
22	6.2	
23	7.1	
24	8.1	
25	8.2	
26	9.1	Conversation 1
27		Conversation 2
28	9.2	Part 1
29	9.3	Part 2
30	9.4	
31	9.5	
32	10.1	Speaker 1
33		Speaker 2
34		Speaker 3
35		Speaker 4
36	10.2	Conversation 1
37		Conversation 2
38		Conversation 3
39	10.3	
40	10.4	
41	11.1	
42	11.2	
43	12.1	
44	12.2	
45	12.3	
46	13.1	
47	13.2	
48	14.1	
49	14.2	
50	14.3	

CD1		
TRACK	ITEM	
51	15.1	
52	15.2	
53	15.3	
54	16.1	
55	16.2	
56	16.3	
57	16.4	